



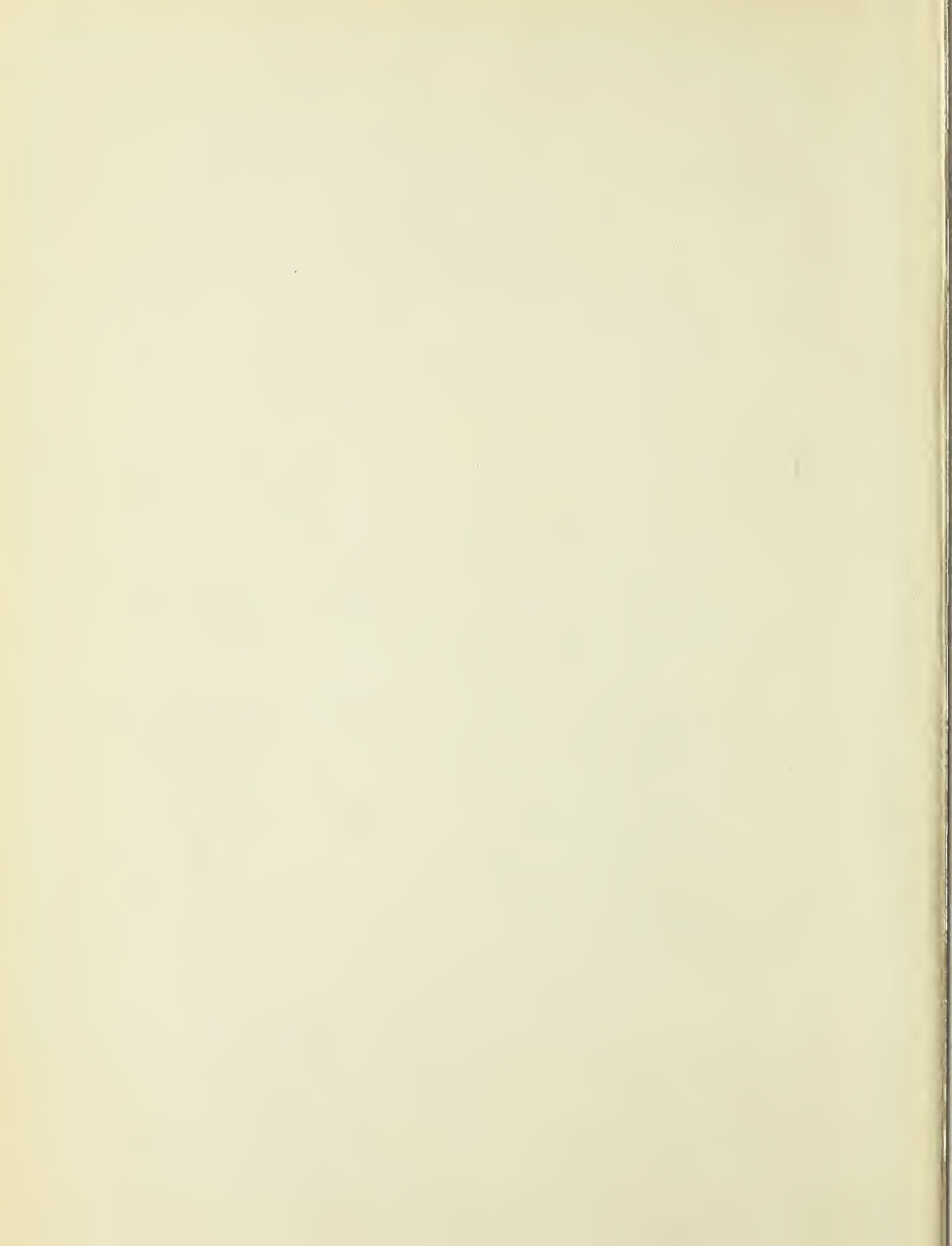
History for the BEGINNER

CORDIER and ROBERT

RAND McNALLY SOCIAL STUDIES SERIES

Ex LIBRIS
UNIVERSITATIS
ALBERTAENSIS







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2018 with funding from
University of Alberta Libraries

<https://archive.org/details/historyforbeginn00cord>



Contributing Artists

COVER AND TITLE PAGE BY ELMER JACOBS. COLOR ILLUSTRATIONS BY JOHN MERRYWEATHER

BLACK AND WHITE ILLUSTRATIONS BY A. F. AND M. S. HURFORD

ART CARTOGRAPHY BY VALDEMAR PAULSEN



Edu
D
2
C79
C3

HISTORY

FOR

THE BEGINNER

A BOOK OF THE RAND McNALLY SOCIAL STUDIES SERIES



R. W. CORDIER

State Teachers College, Indiana, Pennsylvania

E. B. ROBERT

Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, Louisiana



RAND McNALLY & COMPANY • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • SAN FRANCISCO

Copyright 1954, 1948 by
RAND McNALLY & COMPANY
All rights reserved



Made in U. S. A.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY
OF ALBERTA

A-57

The Contents

| | PAGE |
|--|----------|
| “Once upon a Time. . . .” | v |
| LOOKING BACK ON THE STORY OF MAN | 2 |
| THE PEOPLE OF LONG, LONG AGO | |
| A Backward Glance into the Lives of Early People | 22 |
| How the Early People Got Their Food | 25 |
| How Baskets and Pottery Were Made and Used | 29 |
| Early People Learned to Make Better Clothes | 30 |
| Early People Tamed and Used Animals | 33 |
| The Magic of Seeds and Growing Plants | 34 |
| Early People Learned to Live Together in Tribes | 37 |
| The World of Long Ago and Our World Today | 40 |
| WHERE WRITTEN HISTORY FIRST BEGAN | |
| Some Early Tribes Found a Good Home in the Nile Valley | 44 |
| How a Great River Helped the People of Egypt | 48 |
| Different Ways of Living along the Nile | 52 |
| Great Builders in the Land of Egypt | 57 |
| Egyptian Inventions That We Use Today | 60 |
| THE LAND OF THE FERTILE CRESCENT | |
| Eastward from Egypt to the Fertile Crescent | 64 |
| The Story of the Ancient Babylonian People | 68 |
| Other People Who Lived in the Fertile Crescent | 78 |
| A PEOPLE WHO LOVED LEARNING AND BEAUTY | |
| Beginnings in a Beautiful Land | 86 |
| Great City-States in the Land of Greece | 93 |

ROMAN WARRIORS, BUILDERS, AND TRADESMEN

PAGE

| | |
|--|-----|
| Alexander's Plans for His World | 106 |
| The City of Rome in the Early Days | 109 |
| How Rome Grew in Power and Became a Great Empire | 112 |
| How People Lived in the Roman Empire | 116 |
| How Christianity Came to the Roman Empire | 128 |

LITTLE KINGS IN BIG CASTLES

| | |
|---|-----|
| The Roman Empire Is Conquered by the Barbarians | 132 |
| Western Europe under the Rule of Little Kings | 137 |

NORTHERN SEA ROVERS AND VIKING SHIPS

| | |
|--|-----|
| Viking Northmen at Home and on the Sea | 154 |
| West-over-seas toward America | 163 |

TRADERS, TRAVELERS, AND CRUSADERS

| | |
|---|-----|
| Traveling by Road and by Ship toward the East | 170 |
| The Moslems Carry Ideas to Western Europe | 175 |
| Pilgrimages and Crusades to the Holy Land | 176 |
| Growth of Crafts and Trade under the Guilds | 182 |

TRADERS DISCOVER AN ANCIENT LAND TO THE EAST

| | |
|--|-----|
| Civilization Begins in Chinese River Valleys | 192 |
| How the Early People of China Lived and Worked | 194 |
| Working and Playing in the Chinese Empire | 199 |
| China and the Other Countries of the World | 203 |

DISCOVERING NEW LANDS IN A ROUND WORLD

| | |
|---|-----|
| Eyes and Thoughts Turn Eastward | 210 |
| Europeans Cross the Sea of Darkness to a New World | 217 |
| Reaching the Far East by Sailing East and by Sailing West | 221 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| <i>For Teacher Reference</i> | 226 |
| <i>Index and Pronouncing Vocabulary</i> | 227 |

“Once upon a Time. . . .”

When you were very young your father or your mother or your older sister or brother told you stories. Sometimes they just talked. Sometimes they read to you. Many of their stories began “Once upon a time.” Then you knew that the stories would be good. You always heard something really exciting.

Even when boys and girls are as old as you are now they like once-upon-a-time stories. Most boys and girls and most men and women of all ages like such stories.

Boys and girls who are very small like fairy stories just as well as “really-true” stories. By the time they are your age they still like make-believe stories. Even grownups like make-believe. But usually people as old as you are want to know which stories are really true and which ones are make-believe.

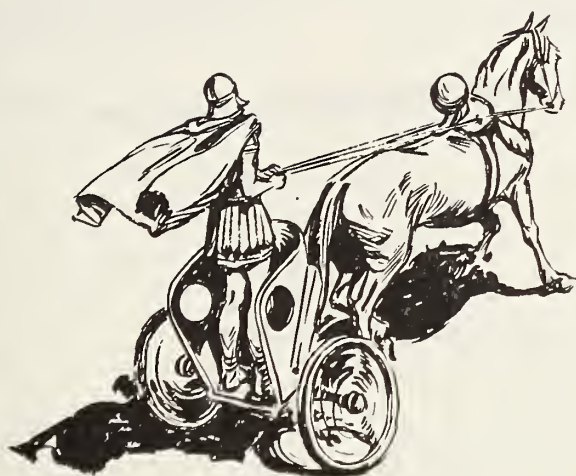
This book is full of once-upon-a-time stories, but they are all really-true stories, too. When a book tells once-upon-a-time stories that are really true, it is often called a history. History tells once-upon-a-time stories about things that people did—maybe a long, long time ago and maybe only yesterday. But if they are history stories they should be really true.

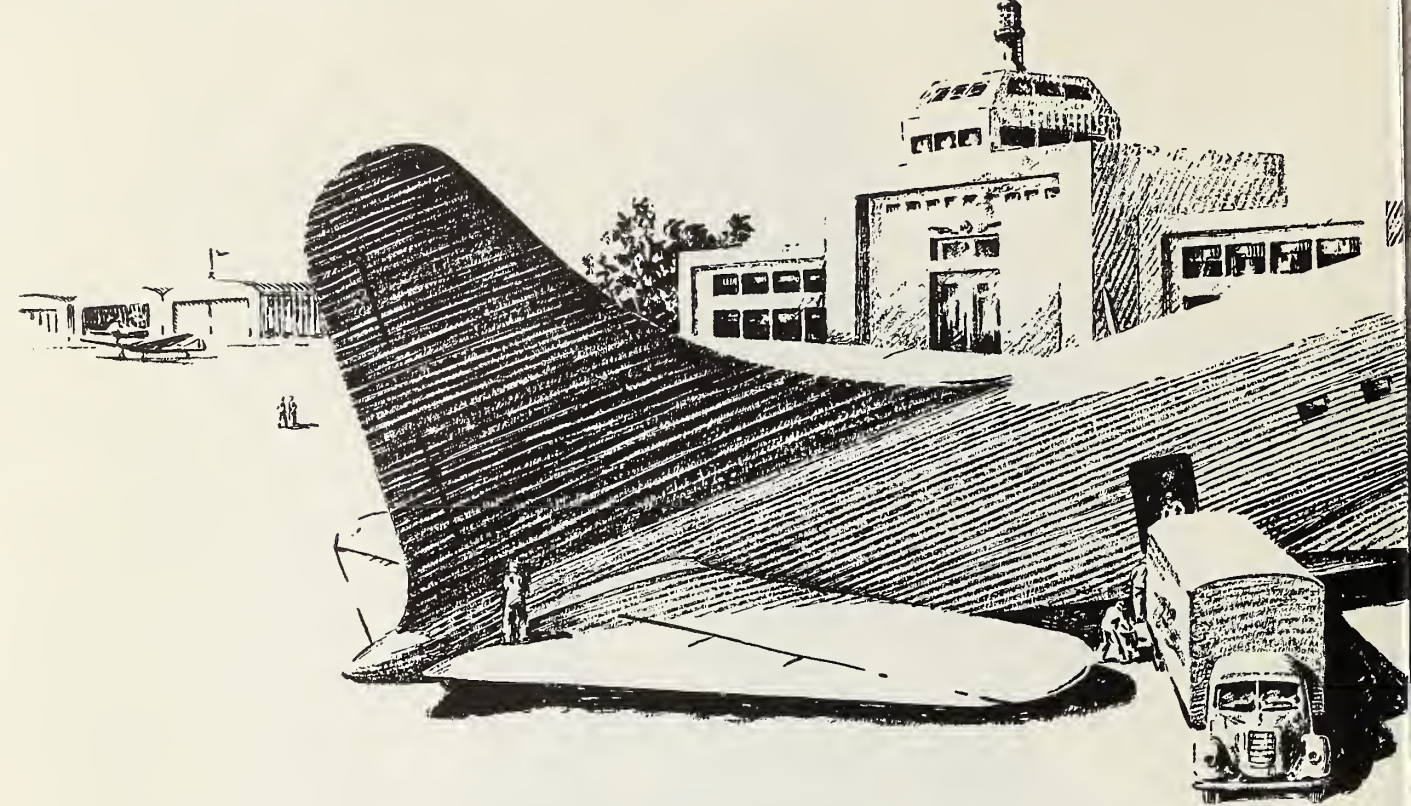
Most history stories tell about doing important things. Doing important things means doing things to help other people or to make things better for everybody. From long, long ago until now many people have done important things. This book tells about some of those people and about what they did. These stories are really true. They all happened “Once upon a time”

HISTORY FOR THE BEGINNER



Looking Back on the Story of Man





Looking Back on the Story of Man

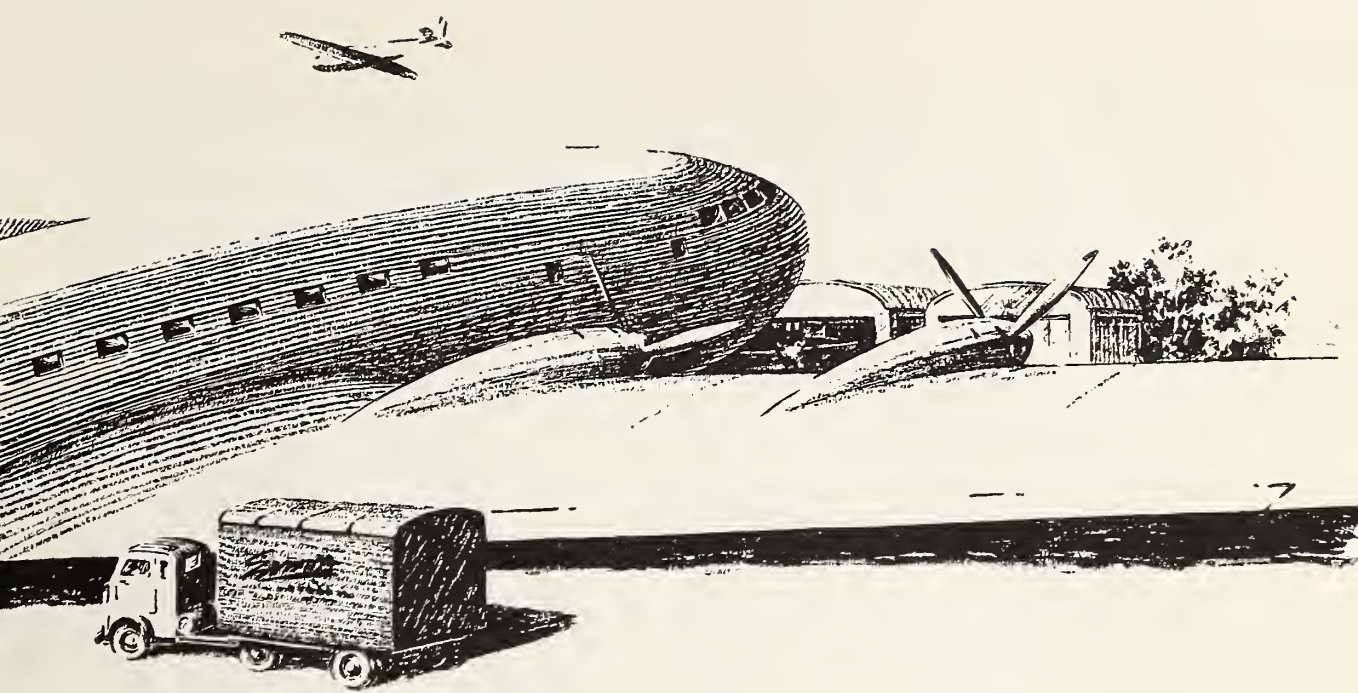
Try to imagine that we have the film for a long, long motion picture. It shows what has happened in the world from many years ago until now. We are going to start with the world you know. It has airplanes in it and landing fields. Fast trains zip along the shining railroad tracks toward the tall buildings of a big city.

Evening comes, and we see electric light shining from the windows of the houses. Here is a man coming home from work. He drives his automobile into the garage and goes into his house. In the kitchen his wife brings food from the refrigerator to cook on the gas or electric range. Music comes from the kitchen radio. The children

are in the living room, watching television. The telephone bell rings, and the woman hurries to answer it.

We have been looking at the everyday things of our own time. It is hard for us to realize that people did not always have them.

Now we are going to start our picture running backward. We have not gone far before we realize that everything has become quiet. There is no noise from the trains or the airplanes or the automobiles. We see no television set. The radio is quiet. The telephone does not ring. What has happened? Why is the film silent? When your parents were children, there were no talking pictures or television.



A little further on, the radio suddenly vanishes out of the living room. We have come to the time when there were no radios. We see people rush out of the houses and look up at the sky. An airplane is flying over. It is a strange-looking airplane, small and slow, with two sets of wings. It is not flying very high. It looks as if it were made of sticks with cloth fastened over them. In fact, that is just what it is made of. Planes are so rare that everyone rushes to see one. We notice the odd automobiles on the streets, too. They are high and square.

Soon we notice that there are no airplanes at all. People would not believe us if we told them it was possible to fly, although the picture has not taken us very far back. Your grandparents probably can remember this time. Very soon there are no automobiles to be seen, either.

Suddenly the motion picture flickers and stops. We have come to the time

when there were no motion pictures. We decide to pretend that our picture could go on, but we soon find another difficulty. The electric lights go out. Fluttering gas lights go on, and we find that we can see quite well. Even in the houses that do not have gas, each kerosene lamp makes a circle of light. People sit around these lamps reading cheerfully. Now take a look at the kitchen. If this is a city house, there may be a small gas stove, but there is probably a coal range. If there is a refrigerator, it does not freeze its own ice. The iceman must come and put in huge blocks of ice.

Our imaginary motion picture has run backward far enough to show us that people did not always have the things we use and enjoy every day. Someone had to *invent* each one of them. First, someone had to think of some useful thing and believe that it was possible. Then he had to think of a way to build it and to make it work.

Now our film unwinds so fast that we can hardly follow the pictures. We know only that things look more and more unlike our world of today.

Let us stop the film a moment so that we can look at the picture more closely. We see a little group of people beside a railroad track. Their clothes seem strange to us, for we are looking at people of more than a hundred years ago. A boy shouts, "Here comes the train!" There is a great clatter and banging and puffing. Then around the

curve comes the funniest little locomotive you ever saw, pulling a short train of boxlike cars behind it. Spurts of steam shoot out from the sides of the noisy little engine. Black smoke puffs from the big smokestack.

As the train passes, all the people cheer and wave their hats or handkerchiefs. Railroads are very new to them.



Locomotives that could run and pull trains were invented only a few years earlier. When trains could run at the surprising speed of thirty miles an hour, people thought they were going very, very fast indeed. Never before in the

whole world had there been any way of traveling so fast.

In those days farmers had only a little machinery, made by hand, to do their work. There were only a few kinds of factories with machinery. Cities had no tall buildings. Most city streets were not paved, and no country roads at all were paved. Houses had candles for lights. A few had stoves for heat, but most houses had only big fireplaces for cooking and for providing warmth. No one imagined all that was to be invented in the next hundred years. People felt just as modern and up to date as we do today.



Suddenly the picture changes again. Railroads and trains are gone from the scene. For a very little while longer we see steamboats on the rivers. Then they, too, are gone. In all the world there is not a train or a boat moved by a steam engine.

Our film rolls back a hundred years from the scene in which we watched the little train. Then it rolls back half a hundred more. We are standing beside a road, though we should hardly call it a road. It is more like a wide, muddy path through a forest.

A horse plods slowly around a curve in the road. The horse and his rider both seem tired, as if they had come a

long way. At each side of the saddle hangs a large, flat, leather pouch or bag. There is no one to tell us, but we know, somehow, that the man is a postrider. He is carrying the mail from one town to another.

Two hundred years ago, a horse was the fastest means of traveling or carrying messages. There was no radio, no telephone, no telegraph. There were no trains or automobiles.

Our picture follows the postrider for mile after mile. For a long, long time there is just the narrow road through the forest. Then there are a few small farms. Many of the fields are dotted with the stumps of trees. Here and





there a farmer is at work, plowing with a wooden plow he had made.

The postrider stops at the door of a farmhouse. He climbs stiffly down from his saddle and goes in. He has a package to leave with the people who live here.

We follow him into the big kitchen. There is a huge fireplace at one side of the room. A big iron kettle hangs from a hook over the fire. The fire-light sparkles on copper pans hanging on the wall. Everything is clean, but the floor is only hard-packed earth. The walls are unpainted boards. The table, the chairs and stools, and the benches look as if the farmer had made them himself, which he had.

The farmer leaves his oxen standing in the field and comes into the house. The farmer's wife leaves the corn bread she is making. Three children run in and stand in a row along the wall. They are all eager to hear the latest news from the postrider.

When the postrider has told all the news, he climbs back into the saddle and rides on. After a while we see the houses of a town ahead of him. He passes a few farmers going to the town in two-wheeled carts drawn by oxen. Other farmers are riding horses, and their wives are sitting on cushions behind the saddles.

Most of the houses in the town are made of wood, but a few are built of red brick. There are no sidewalks, and the streets are not paved. In the center of the town are a few small stores, with narrow windows made of many tiny panes of glass. The largest building is the inn, a kind of hotel where travelers may stay.

The postrider stops at the door of the inn. He carries his bags of mail inside and spreads out the letters and packages on a table. This is the end of his trip. People come to the inn and look over the mail to see if there is any addressed to them.



Again our motion-picture film speeds up. We are going back now a little more than a hundred years. We catch glimpses of sparkling water and tossing waves. We are crossing a wide ocean. Sometimes a ship sails into the picture for a moment.

Here is one now. The sails are dirty and patched. Sun and rain have faded the bright-colored paint that had made the ship so gay. The sailors look very thin and hungry. Their clothes are as patched as the sails and as faded as the paint on the decks.

Our picture shows the ship sailing from the ocean into a wide river. A strong wind is blowing, filling the sails. Waves slap, slap, slap against the bow. Ropes creak. The gay flag at the top

of the mast flutters and snaps in the wind. A new, bright-colored flag has been saved for this day. The ship is almost home, after two years at sea.

Now the ship has reached the town, and the crew is going ashore. Friends crowd up to shake hands, shout greetings, and ask about the voyage. Both men and women are dressed in gay, bright colors. Both men and women wear hats trimmed with feathers.

Some important-looking gentlemen have come to take the ship master with them. They have been waiting eagerly for him. They want to ask him where he has been and what new places he has seen. These people know only a little about the great world. But what they know seems very wonderful to



them because it is far more than anyone knew in earlier times.

Before leaving, the ship master must choose men to guard the ship. The others may go into the town. Many have homes there. Our motion picture follows one man on his way home.

To us the town looks small and crowded and dirty. The sailor thinks it is a fine city, and so it is, for its time. Beautiful stone churches tower above the roofs of the houses.

Our sailor leaves the river bank and walks up a narrow street. There are no buildings for stores. Houses are crowded together, and the front room of each house is a little shop. The fronts can be closed with heavy shutters, but now they stand open. The

sailor can see workmen inside, making the articles that are to be sold. Windows are small, and they are made up of many tiny panes of glass.

Our sailor pushes through crowds of people in the narrow streets. Now and then he must move to the side of the street to leave room for a man or a woman on horseback. People must crowd even closer to the walls when a cart comes rumbling down the street.

His own house is on this street, and here we must leave him. Soon he will be at home, eating the good food his wife has cooked for him in the great fireplace. His four children, taller than he remembers them, ask shyly for stories about his voyage. Their father seems almost like a stranger.



Now our motion picture runs swiftly back again. Three hundred years flash past. The film picks up a narrow road through a forest. A knight in armor rides into sight on his powerful horse. His squire rides along behind him. The squire is a very young man who expects to be a knight some day.

Our picture first shows the knight and the squire riding along the road, but soon they come out of the forest. They stop their horses on a hilltop to look at the scene before them. They are looking down into a wide valley with a river flowing through it.

Down on the more level land, many men are at work. Several of them are guiding a plow that is pulled by six oxen. Behind the plow, men are breaking up the clods of earth with hoes.

Near the river there is a village of little houses. They are made of wood and are poorly built. The roofs are covered with straw. A stone church with a roof of red tile stands near the village. It is larger than the houses. The afternoon sunlight shines brightly on the glass windows of the church.

"Ah, Roger," the knight says, "we shall not sleep in the forest tonight. This is a good manor. Its lord must be a rich man. See, the church has glass windows. We shall have a good supper and beds to sleep in."

Beyond the church is the manor house, where the lord of the manor lives with his family and his many servants. It is made of stone, with a tile roof. The huge chimneys look as if they had just been added.

Chimneys and real fireplaces are new inventions. A stone wall surrounds a large courtyard beside the house.

At one corner of the house is a high tower. A watchman stands on the top of the tower. He looks toward the travelers on the hill and then scrambles down a ladder inside the tower.

"We have been seen, Roger," the knight says. "We had better ride down and let them know we are friends, not spies for a band of robbers."

As they start down the hill, they see several men leading saddled horses from the cellar of the house. They are not at all surprised at this. The cellar is the usual place for the stable.

Near the church the knight and the squire meet the horsemen riding from the manor house. The horsemen lead them to the house, where the lord and lady of the manor make them welcome.

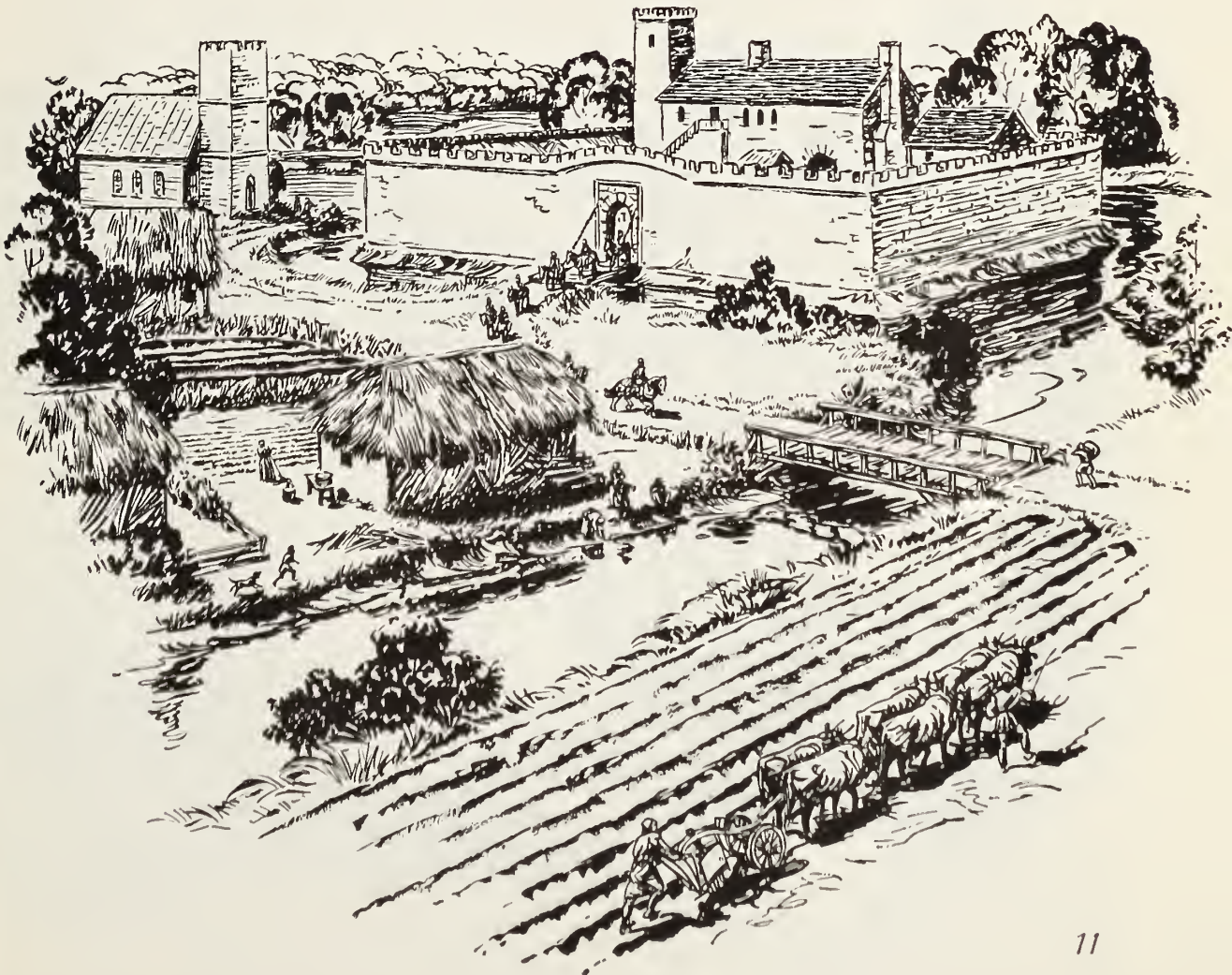
Now the scene changes. We are in the great hall, the main room of the house. A long table extends down the center of the hall. The lord and lady sit at one end of the table, with the knight and squire beside them. The

servants, except those who are serving supper, sit at the other end. Dish after dish of food is brought in.

The people of the manor welcome all visitors because they bring news and entertainment. Usually there is nothing to do in the evening. The lord and lady can read a little, but they have only two books, a Bible and a book about farming. Very few people have any books at all. Now the lord asks a servant to bring the books for the visitors to see. The knight looks at the beautiful little pictures painted in

the margins. He laughs as he says he cannot read. The books are written by hand on sheep skin that has been made soft and smooth. Printing has not been invented.

Now the fire is dying down in the great fireplace. A chilly wind blows through the hall. There is no glass in the windows, only heavy wooden shutters that are closed in very bad weather. The torches that the servants have placed in iron holders are almost burned out. Everyone is sleepy and it is time to go to bed.



The film has flashed backward almost five hundred years. Let us stop it now to see what is happening on the manor. A tall young boy and a man with a great yellow beard are looking across a plowed field. The man is speaking.

"You may well be proud of our land, Edwin. The king gave it to my father when I was a boy, only a little younger than you are now. We came to this

valley with cattle and pigs and five servants with their families.

"We found the valley all forest. With our own hands my father and I helped to build our house and the church. Now we have a good home, and the land makes a living for nearly a hundred people."

As we look over the land with Edwin and his father, Wilfred, we can scarcely



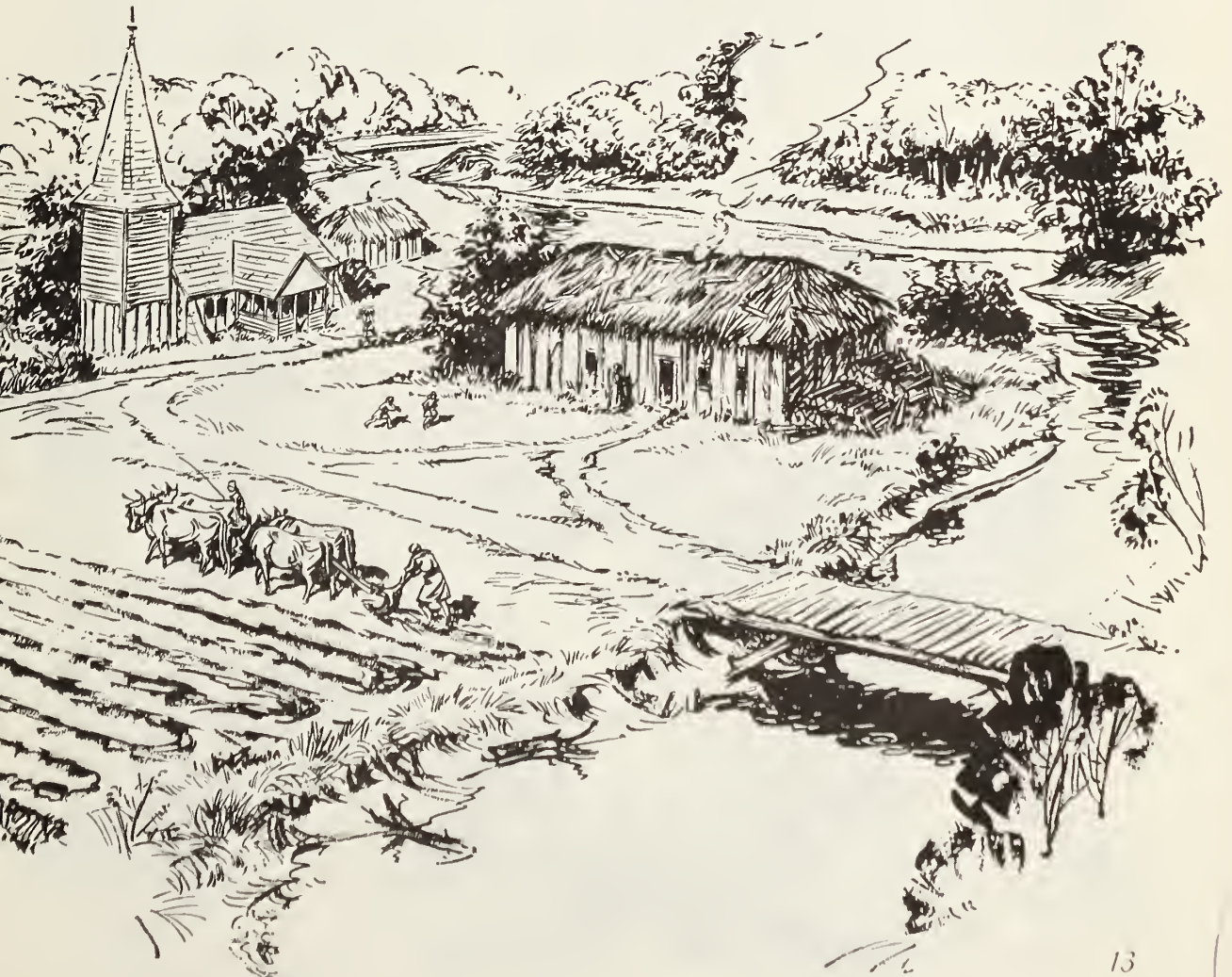
believe that this is the place we saw in the last scene. The fields are smaller. The dark forest comes down much closer to the river.

There is a little village beside the river, but it is smaller than the one we saw. Now there is a wooden church. It seems to be made of logs standing on end. Inside they have been smoothed to make a flat wall. There is no glass in the windows, but Wilfred and the other people are proud of the roof. It is made of flat sheets of lead.

The house is built of wood, like the church. The roof is thatched; that is,

it is covered thickly with straw. Smoke curls slowly out through a hole in the roof. It comes from a huge fire of logs in the middle of the dirt floor of the hall. Before the smoke reaches the opening, it darkens the wall, the furniture, and even the clothes and faces of the people.

In the hall, the food is cooked and the meals are served. The servants sleep here. There is a small bedroom for Wilfred and his family. This is the only other room in the house. To us, Wilfred's fine home seems very poor and rather dirty, too.



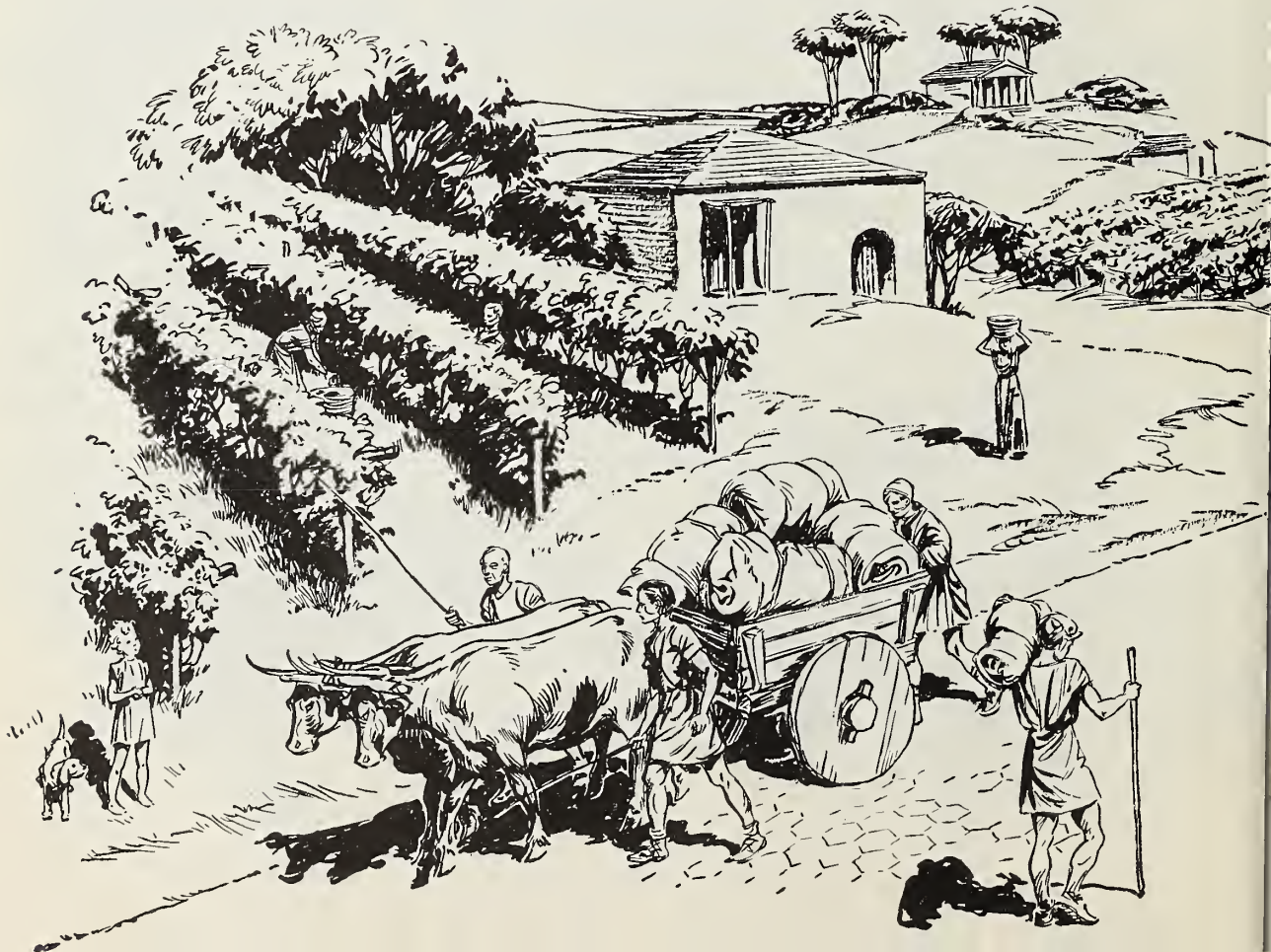
If we were to go on unwinding our picture of the valley, we should soon come to the time when it was only dark forest. And in all the land around we should see only a few clusters of tiny huts. Still further back, however, we should discover something that Wilfred did not know.

There was a time when people lived more comfortably than in Wilfred's day. His own valley had once been farmed, long before his father came there. Hidden by the forest high on the hillside stood all that was left of a fine stone house. The roof had fallen and most of the walls had tumbled down. Wilfred had often seen this tumble-down house when he was hunting deer in the forest. He did not know

who had built it, but he did not wonder much about it. He did not expect to understand everything he saw.

The people who once farmed Wilfred's valley had come from far away. In another land they had learned their ways of living. Our film rolls back the years—a great many years. We are far away from Wilfred's home. The ways of living we see now had been almost forgotten in Wilfred's time. It is true that the people had left many books which told about their ways of living, but most of the books were lost as the years passed.

Let us stop our picture at a time when many people found living pleasant. It is almost a thousand years before the time of Wilfred and in a



land far from Wilfred's home. We are on a hilltop, looking down at a road that is paved with stone. Queer, heavily loaded farm wagons and carts pass in front of us.

Men on horseback dash along the road. Other men ride in two-wheeled chariots. Here comes a company of soldiers, marching down the road. The sun glitters on their armor and on the tips of their long spears. They swing along briskly in careful lines, all the spears at the same slant. We watch them for a long time. They come into sight on the hills and disappear in the valleys as the road runs straight across the country. Miles away at the end of the road we can just see the buildings of a large city.

Scattered over the country near us are many farmhouses. They are built of brick or stone, and they look very clean and pleasant. Beautiful flowers bloom near the houses. Farmers are busy with their work in the fields. Some are plowing with teams of oxen, and some are hoeing. Others are trimming fruit trees or grape vines. On a hillside a boy and his dog watch a flock of sheep.

Though all this happened so long ago, we do not find it hard to understand the life that is going on around us. It is easier for us to imagine ourselves living here than it is for us to think of ourselves living in Wilfred's home or even in the manor house of a still later time.





Again the film runs back, this time for eight hundred years. The city and the road to it have not yet been built. Again we must move to another land if we are to see people who were leaders in their own time.

We are looking at sparkling, dark-blue water. A little ship comes into the picture. There is a big, square sail, but the breeze is light. Long, heavy oars handled by strong men sweep the ship through the water.

Now the scene changes. Our ship is anchored in a harbor with many others like it. The seaport is on an island. Narrow streets climb a steep hill, and flat-roofed stone buildings crowd the hillside. Stone walls surround the city. Stone walls extend out into the water, closing in the harbor.

From the hill we look across a narrow strip of water. Beyond the water we see some mountains. There is just a little lowland, with a few houses and small farms. The people of the island buy their food from the farmers. Row-boats hurry back and forth between the island and the shore. Many are filled with vegetables, bags of grain, or live sheep and goats.

We are looking at the greatest trading city of its time. Its ships carry to other ports woolen cloth, pottery dishes, mirrors of polished silver, bottles made of colored glass, iron knives and axes, olive oil, and beads and other ornaments.

The traders do not give these things away. They exchange them for other things that they need. They want furs, wheat, honey, gold, silver, copper, tin, and lead. Iron is what the traders want most of all. They can never get as much of it as they need





The scene changes. The camera has moved back to show us the earth from a long way off. Most of our picture is dark. Only in one corner is it light. Here and there light flickers in the darker part and faint shadows move. The busy trading city that we saw is almost in the center of the brightest corner of the picture. Soon it disappears. On the bright parts of the film we still catch some glimpses of pictures that are clear.

Farmers work in their fields with hoes. They plow with oxen harnessed to roughly shaped tree branches. Shepherds watch flocks of sheep and goats. In the cities we see hundreds of men working on large buildings made of great blocks of stone. They have only the simplest hand tools. Each city has a few of these great stone buildings, but most people live in little houses built of rough brick or of twigs woven together and plastered with mud.

Here is a man proudly showing another an iron knife. Iron is new and rare. The man paid the blacksmith many sheep for it. There is no money in the world now. When people wish to buy something, they trade something else for it.

Often we see that the people of one city are at war with those of another city perhaps twenty miles away. Armies of a few hundred men march across the picture. The soldiers wear swords at their sides and carry spears or bows and arrows. The leaders ride in chariots drawn by horses.

As the picture changes, we see no more horses. Even kings ride in chariots pulled by donkeys. If there are any tame horses, they are off in those darker parts of the picture which we cannot see so clearly. Iron has disappeared. Weapons and tools are made of bronze or of copper.

More years roll back. We see no more bronze, only copper. There are still a few cities. Tools are poorer, but workmen are very skillful. We know they made fine buildings and furniture, beautiful dishes, and jewelry. Parts of their buildings are standing today. We still have many things that they made. We know what they wore and how they worked because we can still see pictures they drew.

Here is a building that is not quite finished. A man stands on a scaffold, busy with a hammer and chisel. He cuts strange marks on the wall. These marks stand for words. They tell about the man who had the building put up, so that people who come later may know the great things he has done. A few hundred years farther back in time,

and we shall see no writing. No one has even thought of making marks that stand for words. Today we know about these earlier people only from the things they left.

We have come to our last scene, to a time when no one knew how to use metal. It is early morning. The sun shines on a village of small houses plastered on the outside with mud. A man is leaving the village with a flock of sheep and goats trotting behind him. He is taking them out to graze for the day. Fastened to his leather belt the man has an ax and a knife. They are beautifully made of stone. Slung on his back are a bow and a bundle of arrows with stone points. He may need his weapons to protect his tame animals, but he hopes to see a rabbit or perhaps even a deer that he can kill and bring home for food.

Other people from the village soon follow him. They, too, are starting out for the day's work, dressed in clothing made of wool or linen.

Several men are plowing. Others are starting out for the hills, driving their sheep and goats before them. Dogs are helping to drive the animals, just as they do today.

Most of the women are busy around the houses. Breakfast is over, but the smoke still rises from the cooking fires in front of the doors. Here are two children who have not yet finished eating. They have porridge that has been made of crushed grain. They are eating it from gray pottery bowls.

A girl is coming up the path from the stream carrying a tall jar of water on her shoulder. A woman is scooping wheat from a basket and crushing it

into meal between two stones. Several other women are milking the cows.

The people of this village do not think their ways of living are simple and crude. If they ever think about it at all, they think they are up to date. They have no metal. They cannot write. They have never seen even a farm cart. Up to this time no one in the whole world has ever thought of making a wheel.

Faster and faster our film runs toward the end, or perhaps we should say toward the beginning. We see no more plows, but the women still dig in their little fields with hoes made of flat stones or shells fastened to sticks. Then there are no more fields, for no one has thought of raising crops. Women gather wild plants for food. Men hunt and fish. Dogs follow them, but there are no other tame animals. Then we notice that the people are dressed in skins of animals. We have come to a time when people did not know how to weave cloth.

Soon the dogs snarl from the thickets instead of following the people. Dogs have not yet been tamed. There is no more pottery. Baskets are seen a little longer, but soon they are gone. A little more, and the hunters have no bows

and arrows—only stone-tipped spears and stone axes. Somewhere about this time we see the last mud-walled house. People huddle around their fires in caves, beneath overhanging rocks, in little huts of brush, or even with no shelter at all.

For thousands of years there is very little change that we can see. Stone tools, we notice, are not so well made.

At last the fires go out. There was a time when no one knew how to make fire. The picture fades. Even earlier in the warm parts of the earth there were people without clothing, without fire, without even stone weapons or tools. To us they seem little different from the animals around them, and yet they really were different. They had minds that could think and plan, hands that could break a stick or use a stone as a hammer. Because of their minds and hands they could learn to make many things that are like those we make today.

Now you have seen a little of what the past is like. You have gone back step by step to the early days of man. In the pages that follow, you will read much more about the different people you have just seen, about what they did and what they learned.



The People of Long, Long Ago





The People of Long, Long Ago

A Backward Glance into the Lives of Early People

What does long ago mean to you?

When was long ago?

No one knows, because long ago does not mean any particular time. You might think of long ago as the time when your parents were about your age, or farther back, when your grandparents were your age, or farther back still, when your great-great-great-grandparents were young.

You might also think of long ago as a time thousands and thousands of years ago, as it is in the story you are about to read. Try to think of it that way. The make-believe motion picture at which you have been looking will help you to do so. The picture took you back into

history, so very far back that you could not possibly count the years.

Near the end of the picture you saw a family of strange people, not much like any of the people you know now. They are often called the *early people*, not because they got up early in the morning, but because they lived long, long ago in early times.

They were not very pleasant-looking people. Their hair was long and coarse and untidy. Their skin was rough and tough and leathery. Their scanty clothing was made of the hides of animals. Their language was not much better than jabbering, or so it would sound to you. They lived in caves or beneath



sheltering rocks, and they slept on the ground. They had no chairs, no tables, or any of the other comforts of home that we now have.

Of course, no one living today knows exactly what those early people looked like, or exactly what their rude homes were like. Yet we know much about them because some of the caves in which they lived have been found deep in hill-sides or buried deep in the banks of rivers. Wise men who like to study history have dug into those caves and have found weapons and tools of stone and bone. On the walls of the caves they have found pictures. Some of them were carved and some of them were painted in bright colors.

In other places these men have found remains of villages, with ashes from fires, pots and jars of clay, woven baskets, bits of coarse cloth, and ornaments of different kinds.

By careful study and much thought, wise men have discovered many facts

about these people of long ago. They have used all the information they could find, but they have not always been sure how or when things happened. They have had to suppose that things happened in this way or that way, at one time or another. But that need not matter to us. What they have told gives us a good idea of how people of long ago lived, and of how they began to live more safely and happily.

The early people knew very little compared with what we know today. They had seen only a small part of the great round world, because they had no way of traveling except on foot. They had never sailed across the wide seas. They could see the sun, the moon, and the stars, but they did not know as much about them as we do today.

Hundreds and hundreds of years had passed before they learned to use fire to warm themselves and cook their food. It was even a longer time before they built better homes. It was years and

years before they learned how to make comfortable clothing. As for machines, they never dreamed of such things. For a long time they did not even know about wheels.

It may seem odd to you, but no one in those days knew how old he was or when his birthday came. People had not yet learned to think of the passing of time in years or months or days. There were no birthday celebrations nor was there a happy New Year. There was no June or July or December or any other month. There was no such day as Sunday, Monday, or any other day. People knew only that there was darkness when the sun went down, and light again when the sun came up.

There were only a few things that were important to the early people. They had to have food. They had to have shelter from the cold winds and storms. They had to have clothing to protect their bodies. In their search for these things, they made many discoveries and inventions. Their discoveries and inventions seem very simple to us. But they were not at all simple to these

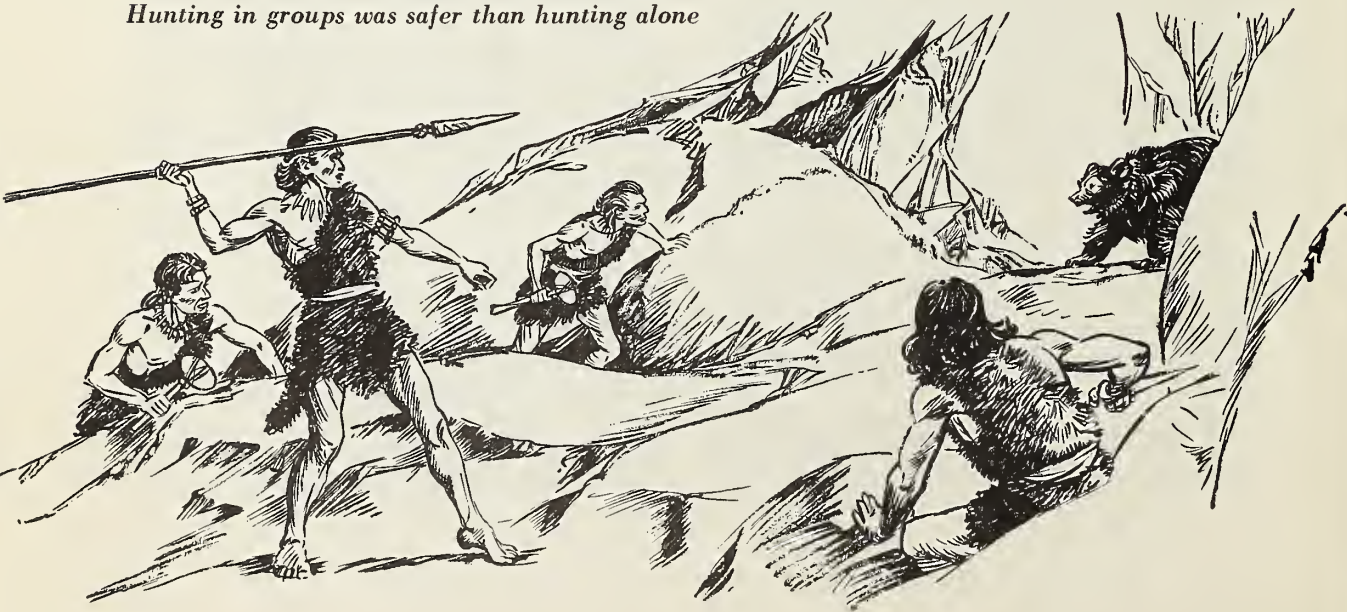
early people. They were very important, and you will see why.

As time went on, people learned how to live together, how to work together, how to help one another. Those things were important to them, as they are to us.

The early people first learned to work together when they went hunting for food. They found that they could get more food if they hunted in groups. So, little by little, they formed groups, or tribes. The tribes were made up not only of the men who did the hunting, but of their women and children as well. In each tribe there was one man who was the leader.

No person in the tribe could do just exactly as he pleased. He had to learn to think of the other members of the tribe. He had to think whether what he did would harm or hurt anyone else, or whether it would harm the whole group. The leaders of the tribes made rules for living together. Those rules were the beginnings of the *laws* that we have in our world today. Perhaps not all the early men and women obeyed the rules, just as all men and women do not always

Hunting in groups was safer than hunting alone



obey our laws today. Anyway, the rules helped the people of early times to live together in peace, just as our laws help us to keep peace.

When any people have learned to do the things that the people of long ago had learned to do, they have begun to

be *civilized*. The whole story of how men first began to be civilized can never be told, because many of the facts about their ways of living have been lost forever. Yet enough can be told to give you a good idea of what living was like in that time long ago.

How the Early People Got Their Food

The early people spent most of their time hunting for food. They had to hunt because there was no other way to get food. They hunted, then ate what they found where they had found it. Fathers and mothers and children didn't sit down and eat together, and they didn't eat three meals a day. They had none of the things that we call good, such as cookies and cakes and jam. They didn't even have bread and butter and milk. They roamed about eating nuts, berries, and the roots of plants. They robbed bees of their honey. They took the eggs from the nests of birds and ate them raw.

Mothers didn't teach their children to say "If you please" or "May I have?" in their qucer language. They taught them to snatch their food quickly, before anyone else had a chance to snatch it. Children learned to take care of themselves, but they learned nothing about being polite.

Like nearly all people of all times, the early people wanted meat. At first they did not know how to kill animals so that they might eat their flesh. They knew no other way than to roam the forests and the banks of rivers and look for animals that were already dead.

They might find a cave bear that had been killed in a fight, or one that had

been drowned, or an elephant that had fallen from a cliff. It may be that now and then the strongest and bravest of the hunters killed an animal with large stones, or perhaps with a limb broken from a tree.

However that may be, when the hunters found meat to eat, they were happy. They ate the raw flesh greedily and gnawed at the bones. Sometimes they found fish that had been washed ashore on sandy beaches or among rocky cliffs. They ate the fish raw, too.

People were always in danger in those early days. They were in danger of being killed by fierce animals or of starving to death. Animals were also in danger of being killed or of starving. Danger was everywhere. It is not a pretty picture for us to think about. But in those times life was not pretty. The world itself was beautiful with trees and grass and plants and winding streams. But living was not beautiful and not at all comfortable.

How tools helped people get food

The early people would have been in greater danger if they had not been more intelligent than the animals. The people could reason and think, but the animals could not. Men could use their hands much better than animals could



Tool makers shaping flint tools

use their claws or paws. Man's hands are like a wonderful machine. Some people say that no machine has ever been made, even in our time, that is as wonderful as the hands of man.

The people learned to use their hands to shape and make things. The men made sharp, pointed, deadly weapons. As time went by, they learned to shape tools from an unusually hard kind of rock called flint. They did this by breaking pieces from the flint rock and then shaping the pieces by chipping. That was hard work and took time and patience. But time meant nothing to these people, and they had learned to be patient.

After a time tools of flint were made sharper and sharper and easier to use. They could be used to kill animals, to take the skins from the dead animals, to clean the skins, to cut meat, and to split wood.

Some of the men became more skillful than others at making tools. Then other men brought their stones and rocks to them to be shaped. The tool makers, in

time, did not go hunting with the others, but stayed at home making tools. The hunters provided the tool makers with food in return for their help. So you see that even in early times people had begun to help one another.

After many years, hunters learned to fasten a point of flint to a bone or a stick to make a throwing weapon, or a spear. Such weapons could be used to kill animals at a distance. They were the beginnings of the bows and arrows which were used later.

Tools of flint and spears and other weapons have been found in caves in which the early people lived. The places where the people made such things have also been found.

How fire made food better

As men learned to be better hunters, they and their women and children had more and better food. But they still ate everything raw, because they had not yet learned to use fire.

There probably has been fire in the world from the very beginning. Smoke

and flames rolled out from volcanoes. Whole forests burned away in terrific flames and great clouds of smoke. Forest fires were started by lightning or by the branches of trees rubbing together in great windstorms. People must have run in terror from fire. They could have lived more comfortably if they had known that fire could be their friend.

No one knows how people learned to use fire. It could have happened in this way: Brave hunters had left their caves in search of food. The day was cold, very cold. The men shivered in the icy winds. They were hungry and their hunger was like pain.

They found nothing to eat near their caves, so they wandered farther and farther away, watching, listening, hoping. As they reached a hilltop, they saw flames of a forest fire. They saw a herd of deer running in fright and terror from the fire. If only they could spear a deer, they would have food at last. They ran in the direction of the deer.

Perhaps the wild creatures sensed that hunters were near, for they turned and plunged into a river. The hunters could not follow because the waters of the stream were icy and deep. Night was coming. Disappointed, miserable with cold and hunger, they went back to their caves in the forest. They would have to wait for daylight before they could go on the hunt again.

In the morning the men were hungrier than ever. They had to find something to eat. They remembered the deer running from the fire and returned to the place where they had seen them. The flames were not so bright, but the fire was still burning slowly. The hunters went nearer and nearer and nearer to the hot ashes. The warmth was pleasant. They held their hands above the ashes and let the heat take the stiffness out of their fingers.

And then what happened? One of the hunters discovered a deer which had been caught in the flames. It was dead. Its flesh had been roasted in the fire. The hunters tore away the flesh and ate it greedily. This hot, roasted meat tasted good—much better than the raw meat they had always eaten before. While the hunters ate, they jabbered excitedly about their good fortune.

In our language perhaps they said something like this: "Fire is good. It frightens animals. See how it frightened that herd of deer. It roasts meat and we know now that roasted meat tastes better than raw meat. We will trap this fire and take it home and use it."

Of course, they didn't say just that. And these things didn't happen all at once as they did in the story. But to think of them in that way helps us to understand how the use of fire might have been discovered.



Something else had to be learned. That was how to keep fire so that it could be used when it was needed. The people knew only one way at first, and that was to keep the fire burning low with leaves and twigs. Perhaps an old woman of the tribe was given the task of keeping the fire alive.

It was many years, very likely, before people found another way to make fire. They learned to rub two sticks together very, very rapidly, so that they would become hot enough to burn. Then they fanned the burning sticks into flame. It takes much skill and patience to make fire in this way.

Perhaps a wise old flint maker made a still better discovery. He had noticed the sparks from his stone hammer as he struck flint. One day the sparks fell on some dry leaves, which burst into flame. By trying again and again, the flint maker became skillful in lighting leaves or bits of dry wood from sparks. He had found a way to have fire always at hand.

Gradually people learned to make good places in which to keep fire burning.

They used stones to build hearths or fireplaces. These hearths were built both inside and outside the caves. Outside, the flames and smoke kept the animals away. Inside, the fire made the caves warmer and more comfortable, though it filled them with smoke.

In time, the fire became the center around which families met, and around which tribes gathered. Tools were made and repaired beside the fire. Plans were made for the next hunt.

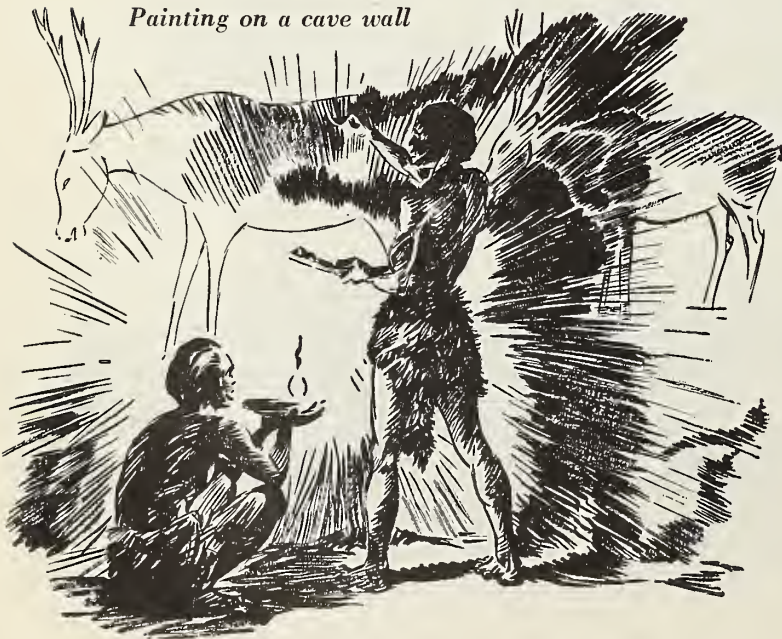
Wise men believe that these early people learned to use fire to light their caves. For how else could the artists of long ago have made those pictures that are still to be seen on the walls of some caves? Perhaps the very first light was only a torch. Then someone hollowed out a lump of stone in which to burn animal fat. Someone would have had to hold this lamp so that the picture maker could see.

While people were learning to make fire and to keep it and enjoy it, they were also learning how to use it in cooking. First they knew no other way than

to roast the meat in or above the hot coals. Later they used pots of clay. How they made pots is a story in itself. This story, like others of early times, cannot be told exactly as it happened. We can only guess how it happened.

This much is certain. One discovery or invention led to another. Fire led to the cooking of meat, and cooking led to the need of pots. The making of pots grew out of the making of baskets. Shall we see how that may have come about?

Painting on a cave wall





Making clay pots

How Baskets and Pottery Were Made and Used

Suppose that a woman of long ago had found some bushes loaded with ripe berries—big, sweet, juicy red berries, more than she could eat. She wanted to take some of them home to her children. Mothers have always wanted to take good things to their children.

How could this mother carry the berries? Her hands would not hold all of them. There were no pockets in her clothing of skin. She had no apron in which to carry things. She pulled some bark from a tree and shaped it into a basket. It was not a good basket, but it held more berries than her hands could hold. That may have been the beginning of basket making.

Anyway, women learned to make baskets. In time they used something better than bark. They used twigs of trees and reeds which grew near the rivers. They

soaked the twigs and reeds until they grew soft and easy to bend. Sometimes they flattened them with stones. They wove them together and shaped them in many ways.

One day, perhaps, a basket of shellfish had been set on the muddy bank of a river. It sank into the soft ground so that its sides and bottom were covered with mud. Soon the mud dried and baked in the sun. Someone discovered that the basket would hold water.

Other baskets were made, coated with mud, and baked in the sun. Later, pots were made without baskets. The women shaped them with their hands. After a while someone discovered that baking pots in the fire was much better than baking them in the sun.

The first cooking pots probably were not set on the fire. The women heated

stones, put them into pots of water, and cooked the food in the heated water.

People used pots for other things besides cooking. They used them for storing and measuring things. They made the pots stronger, more beautiful, and more lasting. Some pots that were lost or buried have been found and have lasted to this day.

Such pots have been found in river beds and in caves. Some of them have

rounded bottoms. Some have pointed bottoms. Others stand on short little legs. Some have wide mouths. Others have narrow mouths and look somewhat like bottles. Some have handles like the baskets after which they were patterned. Some are plain. Others are decorated. Rarely are any two of them alike, yet each has a strange kind of beauty. This pottery is quite different from that which is made now.

Early People Learned to Make Better Clothes

When the early people became more skillful in hunting animals, they had better food. They had better clothing, too, because they dressed in animal hides. No one knows what they used for clothing before that time. Perhaps they used the leaves of trees and the grasses that grew tall by streams and rivers. The women made the clothing and in time became very skillful. When men made better tools, women made better clothing.

First of all, the women had to prepare the hides. They stretched them carefully on the ground and fastened them with little pegs made from the limbs of trees. Then with sharp tools of flint they scraped away every bit of flesh and dirt that clung to the hides. They were careful not to spoil the skins by tearing or cutting through them.

When the hides were clean and smooth, the women rubbed them with fat to make them soft and flexible. Sometimes, no matter how hard they rubbed or how much fat they used, they could not make a whole skin soft. Some parts would stay hard and rough. The women chewed those parts until they were as soft as the rest of the skin.

At first the hides were simply worn over the shoulders and tied to the waist with a vine or a strip of skin. But after a while women made buttons and buttonholes, so that the clothing could be fastened more securely.

The first buttonhole was probably no more than just a hole punched in the hide with a sharp tool. The first button was probably a short twig fastened in the clothing. Whatever it was and however it was made, it held better than the vine or the strip of skin.

In time women made fancy buttons of stone or ivory or bone. These first buttons were not very good because they were too round and too thick. Very likely men complained to the women that those thick, awkward buttons were no good. They were too hard to manage. So women learned to make better buttons. Some of them were quite flat and nicely polished. Others were decorated with carvings of reindeer and of other animals.

Sometimes a single skin was not big enough for a garment. Then the women pieced small skins together. This was slow work because there were no needles

in those days. Using tools of flint, the women punched holes in the small skins. Then they drew narrow strips of skin through the holes and pulled the small skins together.

One day a woman found a better way of fastening skins together. Can you imagine a group of women sitting in front of a cave drawing skins together? Cold weather was coming. They knew this because by that time people had begun to watch the changes in seasons. They all felt that they had to hurry to get warm clothing ready for their men and children.

One woman grew impatient with her slow work. In her strange language she said, "Punch and pull! Punch and pull! Such slow going! There ought to be a better way to do this!" Suddenly she had a bright idea. She ran into the cave and got a sharper tool of flint than the one she had been using. She picked up

a sharp, pointed bone that had been laid aside. She punched a hole, or an eye, in the sharp bone and ran a strip of skin through the eye. That was the first needle and thread!

The other women watched and said, "What a good idea!" In time all women found it easier to make clothing by using needles. Of course, we don't know that the needle was invented all at once in one afternoon by a woman who was impatient with her work. But we can be sure that women did use needles of bone in early days, because such needles have been found in caves and are still in the world today.

In early days shoes were not much more than wrappings to protect the feet. Perhaps the people used a sort of skin sandal for the soles of their feet. We know that they used sandals in later times, though no one has discovered when they were first used.

Preparing and sewing the skins



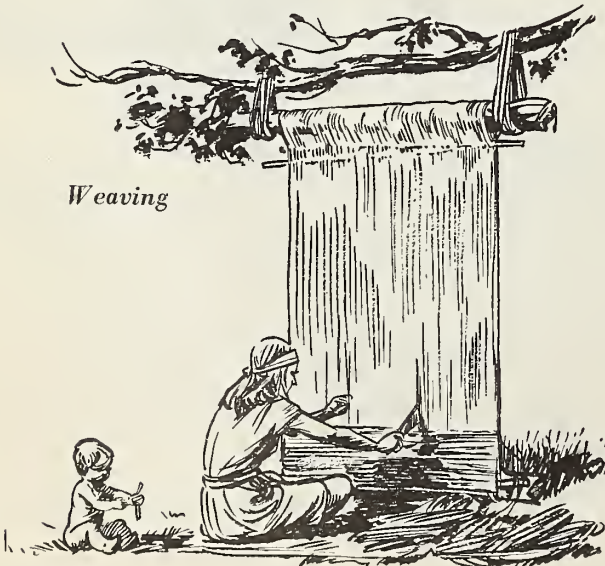
*Flax is dried
after soaking*



Using a spindle



Weaving



Making ornaments

Clothing was used first only to protect the body. After a while people wanted ornaments to make themselves look better. Both men and women wore beads. The first beads were of stone. They were not punched with holes and strung together. They were notched so that they could be hung along strips of skin or pieces of vine. People wore these heavy, awkward strings around their necks and arms. Later they learned to make holes in beads of bone and ivory so that they could be strung. Still later they decorated the bone and ivory beads with bright colors.

We know that other ornaments were made of feathers, of the teeth of animals, and of fishbones. Perhaps the backbone of the fish gave people the first idea of the comb as an ornament. No one knows when they began to use combs to take the tangles out of their long hair. Maybe the women were the first to think of doing that.

Spinning and weaving to make cloth

One idea led to another in the early days, just as it does now. Thus the weaving of baskets led, not only to the making of pottery, but also to spinning and to the weaving of cloth.

People discovered that the stems of some plants are made up of thin, fine fibers. They learned to loosen the fibers by soaking the stems in water and then beating them with stones. They twisted these fibers into long threads. This twisting is called spinning. The first spinning was done with the fingers. A long time later spinners, or spindles, were invented. In time people found that a

plant called flax had stems with particularly good fibers for spinning.

Weaving followed spinning. Women had already woven baskets. They were probably the first to weave cloth from the threads of flax. Cloth woven from flax fibers is now called linen. You may believe that it took a long time to weave a small piece of cloth, because all the work had to be done by hand.

Early People Tamed and Used Animals

In the earliest days of history, people thought of animals only as creatures to be feared. Later they thought of them as creatures to be killed and eaten. It was a long time before they thought of taming and caring for animals and using them for hunting and herding.

Perhaps the first animal to be tamed was the dog. No one knows whether this is true or not, but it could have come about in this way:

A wild dog, a little puppy, was lost from its mother and wandered about in the forest, whining. It came to a cave where people lived. The children of the cave fed it and played with it, for it was a lovable little thing. The dog seemed to like living with people. It grew tame.

By and by the hunters saw that the dog was useful to them in the hunt. The women noticed that it barked a warning when wild animals came near. An idea came to the people. Why not tame more dogs, since they were so useful? Another good idea! Why not tame other wild animals as well?

Gradually the people grew clever at taming animals. They already knew something of the habits of wild creatures. They learned more. They fol-

After a while women discovered that they could make thread, or yarn as we call it, from the fibers of wool. They wove the yarn into a cloth that was warmer than linen and much better for wear in cold weather. After many years of making cloth, women decided that they would like to color or dye it. They learned to make dye from different kinds of berries, grasses, and roots.

lowed the cattle as they went to the river valleys to eat the green grass, and as they went to the springs or the rivers to drink. They noticed that hogs grew fat in forests where they ate acorns and the roots of plants. They noticed that sheep and goats grazed easily on steep hillsides. They saw that most animals moved from place to place as the seasons changed. All such information was useful to the people.

Men set traps for wild creatures of the forest. They caught them when they were very young, so that taming them was easier. In time men became shepherds or herdsmen. They raised cattle, sheep, goats, and hogs. Then they no longer had to depend only on hunting for their food.

Herding flocks was not easy. Sometimes the animals did not like being tamed. They followed wild animals and then became wild again. Sometimes wild animals raided the herds, killing cattle and carrying off sheep, goats, and pigs. And sometimes wandering tribes from other places stole animals from the herds. No matter how carefully the early herdsmen watched and tended their flocks, they always had losses.

They had other problems, too. When the sheep and the goats had eaten all the grass from the hillsides in one place, then the herdsmen had to drive them to other green hillsides. When the cattle had eaten all the grass from one valley, their owners had to find other green valleys. Men with flocks were always moving from place to place.

Since they had to move so often, herdsmen made homes different from the

caves in which their great-great-great-grandfathers had lived. They made tents of animal hides, stretched over strong limbs of trees or poles made of slender young saplings. Tents could be moved easily. Herdsmen also made huts of trees and branches, fastened securely and plastered with mud. Such homes could not be moved, but others could easily be built when herdsmen moved to new hillsides or valleys.

A herdman's tent



The Magic of Seeds and Growing Plants

After a time, however, some herdsmen grew tired of moving. They began to like living in one place, especially if they had been fortunate in finding a pleasant spot.

A new discovery had been made—a discovery which must have seemed like magic. The herdsmen found that plants grow from seeds. Don't think that they should have known that simple fact all along. Don't think that they were very stupid not to have made the discovery sooner. You, of course, have known for ever so long that plants grow from seeds. But someone told you. How long do you think it would have taken you to learn that fact for yourself?

The people of those early days did not learn the magic fact about the seeds for many thousands of years. But when

they learned, life grew gradually pleasanter. They cultivated plants, raised crops, and became farmers.

The people kept seeds for planting and sowing, as well as for food. They watched the changes in the seasons and planted their seeds at the best time. Plants grew better, they learned, when the ground in which they sowed the seeds had been broken, loosened, and stirred. You remember that, long before this, men had learned to make tools. Now they made rude plows for breaking the ground, and hoes for stirring and loosening it.

There were some people who feared to break the ground or to stir it. They thought that the earth would be angry at being treated so roughly. Then, as now, there were people who didn't like

new ways of doing things. But in time they saw that the earth was not angry. They thought that the earth was rather pleased to be stirred, because plants grew much better.

The first plow was probably pulled through the soil by a woman while a man held it in the ground. After a time, farmers began to train the ox or the cow to pull the plow and to carry in the harvest. They drove their cattle over the stalks of wheat, rye, and barley to trample out the grain.

When people became herdsmen, they had more food and better clothing than when they were only hunters. When they became farmers, they had still more food and better clothing. As farmers, they lived more settled lives, and so they made better homes. All this time they had been learning to do other useful things, such as spinning, weaving, and making pottery. They still went hunting, too, but they no longer depended so much on wild game for food. The herds supplied them with meat.

Early People Learned to Travel

Have you wondered how the people of those early, early days traveled from place to place? Have you guessed that they walked? If you have, you know that you guessed right. There was no other way to travel; that is, there was no way until men learned to use boats.

The first man who rode on water must have had an exciting ride. Maybe he fell into a rushing river and saved himself from drowning by climbing on the trunk of an uprooted tree that was floating down the stream. Maybe the man held on to the branches in fright as he



Plowing



Sowing the seed



Gathering the harvest



Oxen trampling out the grain



Learning to travel by water



watched the swiftly running water. But soon he saw that the water was carrying him almost as fast as his two legs could carry him, and that the tree trunk did not sink under his weight.

Other men must have tried riding on trees or logs floating on water. In time, they learned to chop away the branches of trees and to hollow out the trunks. Then they could sit inside their log boats, not on the outside. They were more comfortable. We call such rude boats dug-outs, and you can see why. After men knew how to use fire, they discovered that burning out the inside of a log was easier than chopping it out.

Soon men made better boats. They pushed them along streams with limbs of trees or with poles. Later they shaped paddles with which to guide the boats and to make them go faster. Still later

they fitted them with sails of animal skins or of linen cloth. When the wind was blowing from the right direction, the boats were carried along easily and the people riding in the boats did not need to do much paddling.

On land, however, there was still no way of traveling except on foot. There was no way to carry heavy loads except on the backs and shoulders of men. Of course, people didn't have much to carry except when they had been on the hunt. Hunters could carry home small game, but larger animals had to be dragged. Dragging was almost sure to tear the skins. To prevent spoiling the skins, hunters hauled larger animals, and other heavy objects too, on a sort of sled made of the branches of trees.

After hundreds of years, the wheel was invented. It was a very important

Learning to travel by land





invention because it was the beginning of all the wonderful machines that we have in our world today.

Probably men got their first idea of the wheel when they discovered that heavy animals could be rolled on tree trunks or logs more easily than they could be dragged. After many years someone thought of cutting off a section of a log and making a disk-like wheel. Someone else cut off two sections, made

a hole in the center of each, and joined them with a pole. Then someone made the first two-wheeled cart.

In time, people found carts very useful for hauling grain, fruit, vegetables, pottery, and many other things. Herdsmen used carts when they moved from place to place. Men and women may have pushed or pulled the first carts. Later they trained the ox and the cow to pull them and so could carry heavier loads.

Early People Learned to Live Together in Tribes

From early times people have lived together in groups. The earliest group was the family. Fathers, mothers, and children lived together. The fathers went on the hunt. The mothers and children helped skin the animals that were brought home. Women and chil-

dren went hunting for food, too. They searched for roots, nuts, berries, honey, and birds' eggs.

Every family had some kind of home. When the people found that hunting together was both safer and better than hunting alone, they began to live closer



together. Often several large families shared the same cave.

Can you imagine such big families? Fathers and mothers and brothers and sisters and grandfathers and grandmothers and uncles and aunts and cousins, all living together in one cave! The caves must have been very large, or the people must have been very crowded. But that's the way they lived. We would call such a family group a *clan*. Each clan had a leader who was sometimes the strongest, sometimes the oldest, and sometimes the most skillful member of the clan. But the fathers were still the heads of the families.

Each clan had its own rules and laws and customs, so that its members could live together more peacefully and happily. As the number of people grew greater and greater, clans were joined together and formed into *tribes*. Tribes were first formed for better protection. Later, tribes were made up of different kinds of workers, such as farmers and herdsmen and weavers.

Have you been wondering who owned the land in the days of long ago? All

the land over which people wandered was just their part of the world. It belonged to everyone and to no one. When people became farmers, they began to think that the land on which they raised their crops belonged only to them. They would get very angry when herdsmen drove their flocks over ripening grain or newly planted fields. You can see why.

And can you see why herdsmen still thought that they might drive their flocks wherever they pleased? They still thought that the world belonged to everyone. There were fights and small wars between farmers and herdsmen. Each tribe had its own rules for good conduct. But there were no rules for good conduct between different tribes. Such rules came later, much later.

Learning to divide the work

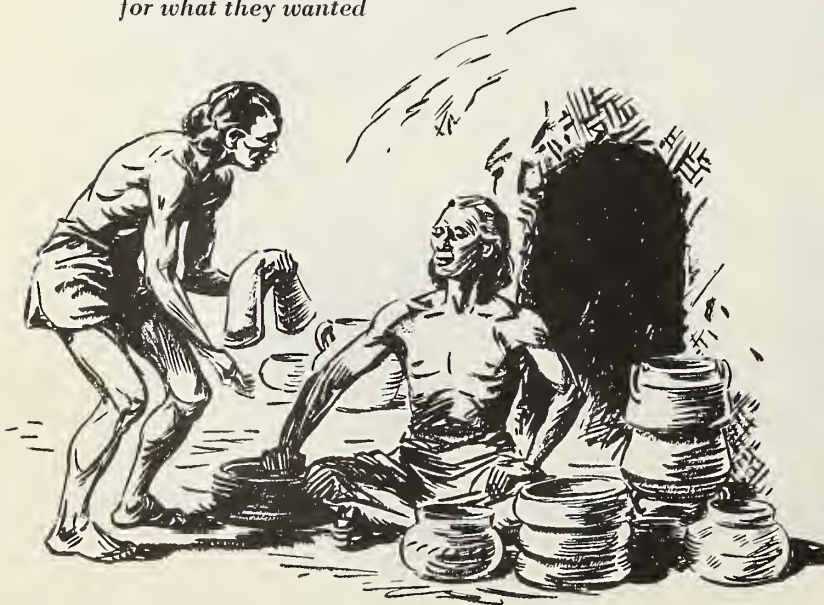
In each family or clan or tribe there were some members who were more skillful than others. Some could make better tools, some could do better weaving, some could make better pottery. It was decided after some time that

each member should do the work that he did the best. Thus people learned to divide the work among themselves.

After a while different tribes did different kinds of work. So it happened that the men and women of one tribe made most of the pottery. The men and women of another tribe did most of the weaving.

Trading among tribes began. People could not buy and sell as we buy and sell because there was no money. They

*People traded what they had
for what they wanted*





How an early village may have looked

traded what they had for what they wanted. Pottery might be offered in exchange for linen cloth. As you may imagine, there was much arguing before trades were finally made.

Building villages

Gradually, different tribes built little villages where they lived together. You must not think of such villages as anything like our own small towns. There were no wide, pleasant streets, shaded with trees. There were no gay flower beds and no green lawns. There were no big, cool porches where the women rocked and sewed and visited. There were no stores, no schools, no churches. There were only groups of rude homes huddled together.

In some of these villages the houses were made of slender tree branches woven closely together and covered with mud. In other villages the houses were made of the trunks of small young trees woven together and roofed with straw. Stone, brick, and lumber were not yet used for building.

Usually each house had only one room. On one side of the room was the sleeping place. That was just a bed of reeds piled on the earthen floor and covered with the skins of animals. On the other side was the hearth, where the

cooking was done. It was a little like our fireplaces. A hole was left in the roof just above the hearth so that the smoke could escape. There were no windows and doors as we think of windows and doors, but only openings.

It is pleasant to think that some of the homes may have been lighted, and we may think that. You remember that men had learned to make rude lamps of stone in which animal fat could be burned. These lamps were shaped like saucers and for that reason could not hold much fat. No one knows what was used for wicks.

Song and story by firelight

For a long time fire had been the center around which members of the family or the clans met when darkness came. Later it was the center around which different tribes gathered.

Old men told of their dangerous hunts or of the brave deeds of others. Thus the telling of stories for pleasure began around the fire.

Songs had their beginnings around the fire, too. They were songs without tune, as we know tune. But they gave pleasure to the people who made them and sang them. Often the people danced to the rhythm of the songs. A good harvest, a successful hunt, and other happy

events were celebrated with dancing. But there were still no birthday parties, because people had not yet learned to keep count of the passing of time by months or years.

The people found much pleasure, no doubt, in their meetings around the fire. They learned many new things. They learned from the stories of the old men. They learned new ways in which to do their work. This was very important, because men could not leave written accounts of what they had learned or of what they had done. There was no way of writing. You can see why so much early history has been lost. And you can see how important writing is. Until the invention of writing, there were no storybooks, no history books, no books of any kind.

The time when there was no written history is sometimes called *prehistoric* time. Does prehistoric seem like a hard word? It need not. *Pre* means "before," so prehistoric is really very simple. It means "before written history." You have been reading in this book of prehistoric days.

When people had learned to write accounts of what had been done, they didn't put down everything that had happened. They did tell enough so that we do not have to guess how things happened. That is what we have had to do in much of this story.

When you read about the Egyptians, you will see how men learned to write. Because the Egyptians could write, they left a clearer history than that left by earlier people.



The World of Long Ago and Our World Today

The Egyptians lived miles and miles away from your part of the world. If you have ever walked one mile, you know how far it seemed to you. When you ride in an automobile or on a train, one mile does not seem so far. If you ride in an airplane, a mile seems shortest of all. To reach the place where the Egyptians lived, you might have to ride hundreds of miles by automobile or by train. Then you would travel thousands of miles more on a ship, or you might travel thousands of miles by airplane.

You would be going almost halfway around the earth. But you would think you were going over a flat surface.

The world does not look round. The moon when it is full looks like a ball. It is round, and our world is round, too. But it looks flat to us because we can see only a very small part of it at one time, even from an airplane, no matter how high it flies.

You may have made models of animals, or of airplanes, or of automobiles, that were much smaller than real ones.



Men have made models of the world that we call globes. A globe that is small enough to stand on your desk is very, very much smaller than the real world, but it is a good model. It shows how much of the world is water, how much is land. It also shows the shape of the land. Because the globe is round, you must turn it around and around to find all of the land.

On the picture of the globe at the left on this page are light spaces and dark spaces. The larger dark spaces or parts show the lands of North America and South America. The light spaces and the light lines on the land show water. The smaller dark parts are islands.

The men who made this model of the world marked on it the continent on which we live. They showed the land where the Egyptians and other early peoples lived, too. That is shown on the picture of another side of the globe at the right on this page. You will read about these people in the next sections of this book. You will have fun when

you look for places on the globe and when you learn about maps.

The early people that you have been reading about in this book could not write or print. They kept no records telling about what they did and saw. You know about more of the world than that part near your home and school—even about more than you yourself have seen in riding to other places. The globe at the right shows many of the lands where Egyptians and other people lived. We know this because they kept records that told about the lands they had seen. They did not know about all the world, as we do.

Early people saw only a small part of the world. Stories in the other parts of this book tell how people learned more and more about the world. They tell how people traveled and found new lands until in time they knew about the whole world. With the stories in this book there are pictures of parts of the globe showing where early people lived and where they traveled.

The History Workshop

Early people left no books because they could not write. From the tools and weapons they left, we have learned much about their way of living. Wise men have studied the things they found in the caves where some of the early people lived. They have told us what they learned about early men.

How the world changes

Would you like to go back, back, back, to the time when people got their food by hunting, when they lived in caves, when they dressed in the skins of animals? You can do so if you sit quite still in your seat and use your imagination.

1. Think of things that you know quite well, but that could not have been known in those long-ago days. Name some of them.

2. Now think of the time when people began to live in villages of rude huts. They learned to make baskets and pottery and better clothing. They began to have meetings around the fire. Try to imagine a village and the people in it. Perhaps your teacher will let you describe the picture you have made in your mind.

3. If your school is in the country or in a small town, plan to take a walk with your teacher. Try to find some spot where you will see no signs of things made by people: no buildings, no railroads, no roads, no fields, no bridges, no fences. You may not find such a spot, but it will be fun to try.

Drawing and collecting pictures

1. Plan a border of pictures of a long-ago village. Try to draw pictures that will go well together. They will make an interesting decoration for your schoolroom.

2. Make a scrapbook and paste in it pictures that you draw or collect as you study about early people. Under each picture write a few lines about it.

Matching parts of sentences

Below on the left side are beginnings of sentences. The endings are on the right side, but they are not in the right order. Choose an ending for each beginning to make a correct sentence.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. In caves we have found pictures | a. taught to work for man. |
| 2. Early man spent | b. protect himself from beasts. |
| 3. Man used fire to | c. help him with his farming. |
| 4. Early man learned to plant | d. most of his time hunting food. |
| 5. Man made stone weapons to | e. drawn by early man. |
| 6. Man made a crude hoe and plow to | f. studying things they made. |
| 7. Later, animals were tamed and | g. seeds and grow food. |
| 8. Some houses of early people | h. of clay. |
| 9. Dishes of early people were made | i. were made of branches of trees and mud. |
| 10. We have learned about the ways of living of early people by | j. keep him warm and cook food. |

A story to dramatize

Plan a play about early people who lived in a house with mud walls and a straw roof. Write the play as you plan it. In your play you can use some of the pictures you made. What other things will you need?

Books to read

Ask at your library for these books. *Cave Boy of the Stone Age*, by Margaret A. McIntyre. *Dan-Hur and the First Farmers*, by William Nida. *Man's Long Climb*, by Marion F. Lansing. *Cave Twins*, by Lucy Fitch Perkins. *The World We Live In and How It Came to Be*, by Gertrude Hartman. *The Early Farmers*, by Katharine Dopp.

Where Written History First Began





Where Written History First Began

Some Early Tribes Found a Good Home in the Nile Valley

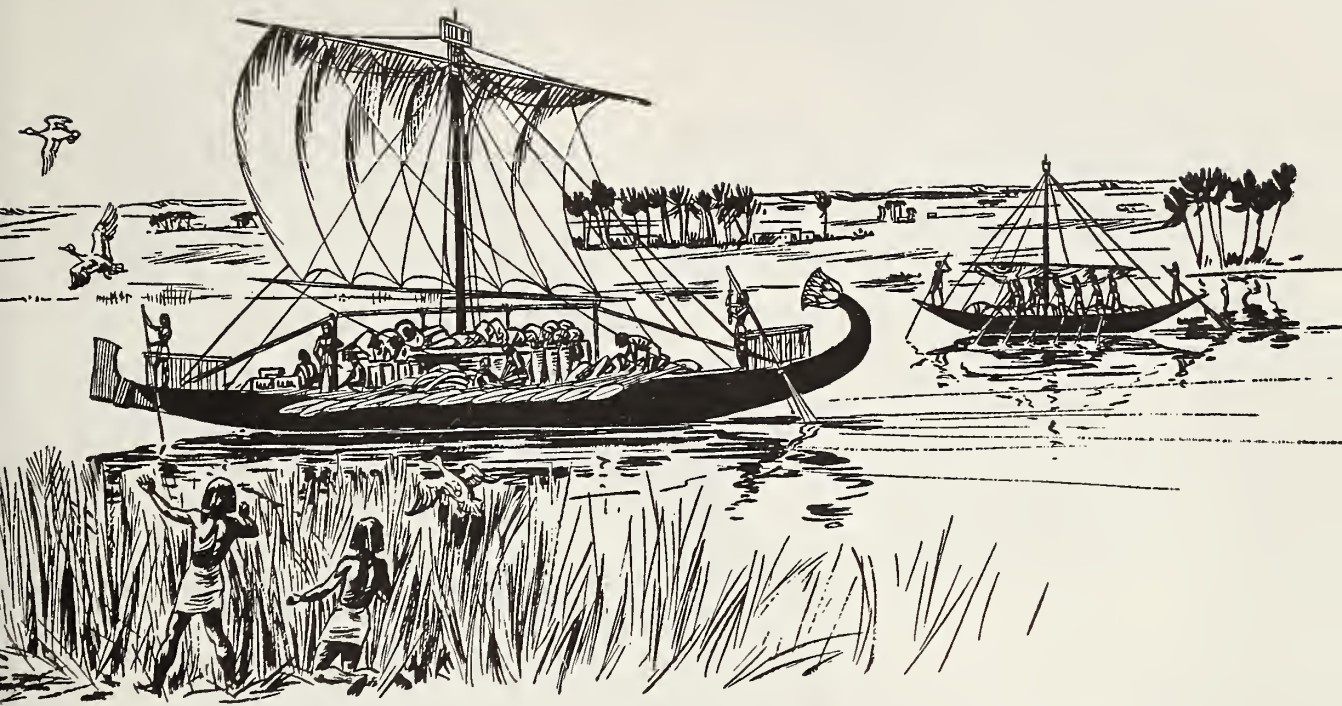
Between hot, dusty desert lands lay the shining country of the early Egyptians. These ancient people didn't look at all like us. Their skin was dark, and their clothing was nothing like the clothing we wear.

Yet they were like us in some ways. Even in that long-ago time they had learned how to farm. They had built splendid cities. There were soldiers and judges and doctors and carpenters, as there are in our country today. The people loved to laugh and sing. Their children had funny little wooden toys that jumped about on strings.

The Egyptians were among the first people of the world to leave a history of

their country for others to read. It is an exciting history. Some of it is written on a strange kind of paper. Some is explained in the paintings which the Egyptians left on the walls of their buildings. Their paintings tell even more than their writings. It is mostly from the paintings that we know just what kind of people the early Egyptians were. These paintings show how they lived and what they did.

The maps on pages 46 and 47 show you where the Egyptians lived. A great, long river, called the Nile, runs through their country from south to north. Toward the end of its journey the river divides into many branches and flows



into a large body of water called the Mediterranean Sea. On each side of the river valley are hot dry lands, or deserts, where little or nothing will grow. We should remember this river because it is one of the most interesting rivers in the whole world.

Just where the early Egyptians came from, we don't know. Perhaps they were wandering shepherds who had come down the hills and crossed the burning deserts into the green valley of the Nile River. No one really knows. But, whoever they were, wherever they came from, they stayed in that green valley with its long, winding river.

It was a lovely valley. By day the sun shone brightly in an unclouded sky. By night the moon, like a great silver balloon, sailed in a sky like dark velvet. There were no storms that might drive the people to crouch fearfully in caves or to hide beneath sheltering rocks. They had enough food and water for themselves and their animals. What

more could they want? They wandered no farther, but stayed in this pleasant place to hunt, to fish, and to farm.

The wanderers stayed, and their children stayed, and their children's children stayed on and on. Slowly, oh, so slowly, they built a great and powerful country. The building of that country took thousands of years—how long we do not know. But to get an idea of how it was built, let's go back to the beginning, to the time when those first wanderers came to the green valley of the Nile River.

At first these people were happy in their valley. But they had not been there very long before they began to see strange changes. What did the changes mean? The people were troubled and filled with fear. They saw the grass become yellow and dry and the leaves of the trees wither. They saw the river shrink under the fierce heat of the sun and saw its banks harden and crack. They saw the barren desert pressing



farther and farther into the valley and claiming the land as its own.

The people must have wondered how their next crops were to grow. They must have been terrified when suddenly the river began to rise. It rose higher and higher until it spread out in a great flood all over the land. The waters swirled and whirled and pushed and rushed. The river was no longer

clear, but dark and dirty with the great quantities of mud it carried. Much of the beautiful valley had been swallowed by the mighty river!

Trembling and fearful, the people ran farther and farther from the oncoming waters. What should they do? What could they do? Still the river rose. Were they to stay here and be drowned in these muddy, whirling waters?

Two Maps Showing Where the Egyptians Lived

To study this book you need to know about maps and globes. The Egyptians didn't know about them. That is one of the reasons why they didn't know very much about the world. A globe is a model of the world. The map on the opposite page is a picture of a large part of the globe. The map on this page is a larger picture of part of the map on the opposite page. It shows the part within the white lines. At first the Egyptians knew well only this very small part of the world where they lived. But, as time went on, people learned more and more. This book will tell you how the Egyptians and the people of many other countries learned about the world and when they learned it.



Perhaps some of the people ran away. They left in terror, not knowing where they were going. Yet some of them stayed. Otherwise there might never have been people like the Egyptians.

The people who stayed were glad. After the river had returned to its banks, everything grew fresh and green again. Happily, the people brought out some of the seeds they had been saving for food. They planted grain and vegetables, and in a short time there were growing crops again.

The flood came year after year. After a while the people found that they could raise two or three crops a year. The sun always shone warm and there was never a frost. Life in the valley of the Nile grew more pleasant year by year. The people worked their farms and cared for their animals. They had plenty to eat. They laughed and sang and were happy.

They were not afraid that people stronger than they would drive them out of their valley and take their land away from them. It was not easy for

other people to get into the valley. There were mountains and deserts to cross. To the north lay the great Mediterranean Sea. No one had reached Egypt by that sea. At that time no one had learned how to make boats strong enough to venture out on such a large sea. So the Egyptians lived in peace year after year.

As the years went by, villages were formed, and each village had its own chief. Some of the villages grew into cities, and the cities, too, had chiefs. Some chiefs became more powerful than others and ruled over more and more land. They made war on one another. Finally only two chiefs ruled over Egypt. They became kings, rich and powerful. One of them ruled over the southern part, called the Upper Kingdom. And the other ruled over the northern part, called the Lower Kingdom.

At last there came a king strong enough to unite the two parts, and he ruled over all Egypt. By that time the land of the Egyptians was a great country, the home of a great nation.



The flood waters spread over the valley

How a Great River Helped the People of Egypt

All the people, the strong and the weak, had helped make Egypt great. But they had not done it alone. The warm sun, the rich soil, and, most of all, the Nile had helped.

Follow with your finger the Nile River on the map on page 47. Try to imagine that valley, green with growing crops. Try to picture to yourself the dark-skinned Egyptians of ancient days on their farms, in their villages, and in their cities.

As you imagine all this, remember that Egypt was then, as it is now, a hot dry country. It almost never rains there. In fact, it rains so seldom that a sudden shower is an exciting event in that land.

The gift of water

There was no need of rain in the valley. Each year the river brought plenty of water for the crops. Until the Egyptians came to understand something of this wonderful gift of their river, they must have had many fears. Each year, when things dried up, the people must have thought that their river was too old, too tired to bring the gift of water again. But the next year, and the next, and year after year, the flood waters

came, bringing new life for plants and new life and happiness for the people.

When the Egyptians understood how important the rising of the river was, they began each spring to watch for signs of the flood. They set measuring rods near their cities and larger villages to show the rise of the waters. Sometime in the month which we call June messengers were sent out to examine these rods and find out how much the flood waters had risen.

When the messengers returned with the glad news that the flood was at last on its way, there was great joy among all the people. Little children laughed and shouted in the streets. Young men and women danced and sang songs. The older people gave deep thanks for the great gift of their river. By late June the flood was in the valley. By late fall its waters were leaving the land. Then the people began to plant their crops.

The gift of soil

The Nile brought yet another gift that the Egyptians soon came to understand and appreciate. It brought fertile soil to their valley, tons and tons of it. And, as if that were not enough,

the river spread the soil inches deep over the valley. The soil came from the mountains far away, where the Nile has its beginning.

By and by the Egyptians learned to make better use of the gifts of their river. At first they took the flood times and the dry times as they came. They learned, as time went on, that the water came too swiftly. There was too much of it. They knew that they must learn to control this flood of water.

They had noticed that water stood in low places long after the river had returned to its bed. They saw that this water could be used to sprinkle their crops. So they began to dig holes in which to store the waters of the flood. This saved them the hard work of carrying water all the way from the river, as they had been doing in the past.

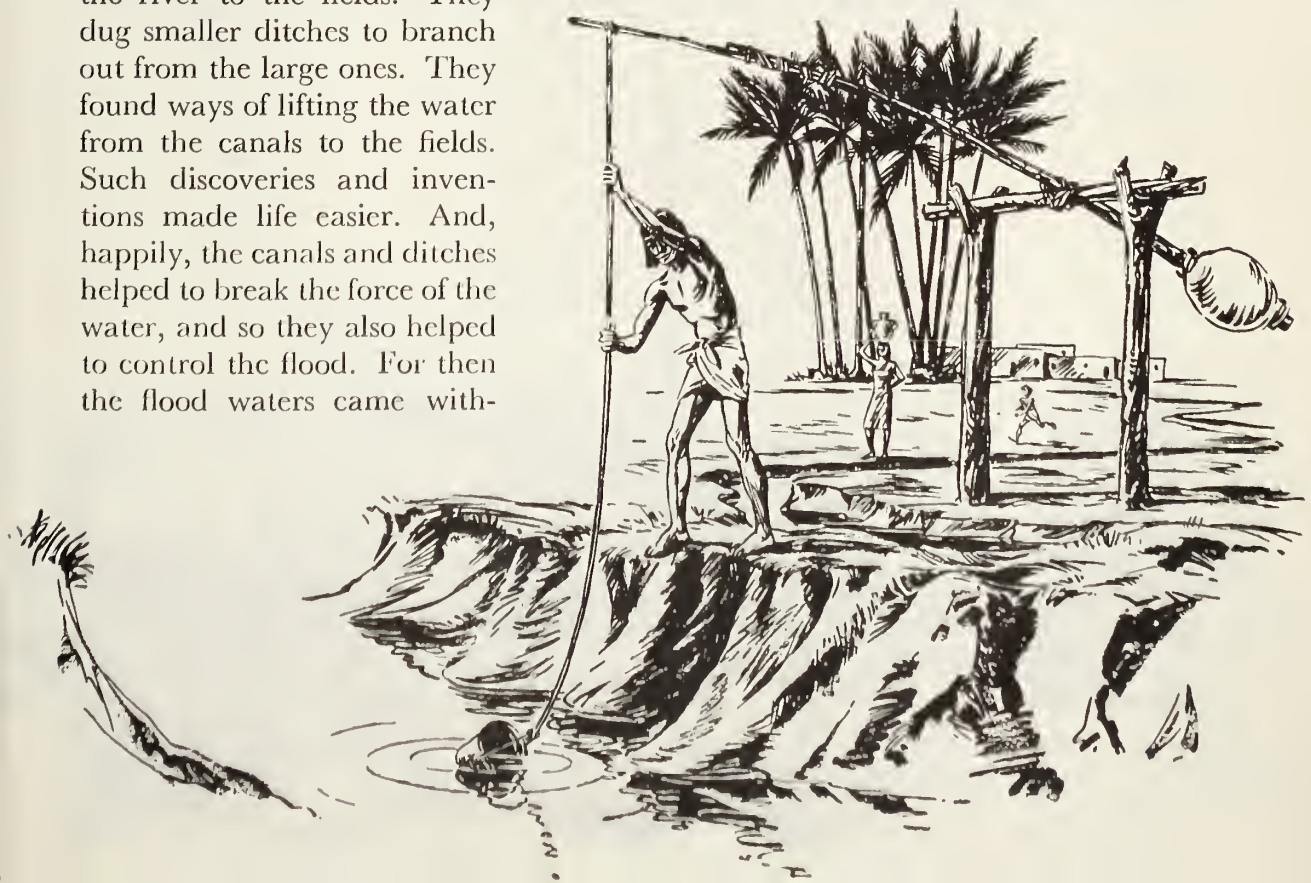
After a time they learned to dig great canals that led from the river to the fields. They dug smaller ditches to branch out from the large ones. They found ways of lifting the water from the canals to the fields. Such discoveries and inventions made life easier. And, happily, the canals and ditches helped to break the force of the water, and so they also helped to control the flood. For then the flood waters came with-

out whirling and rushing. They spread quietly over the land.

We know now what causes the Nile to flood. The water comes from the heavy rains at the sources of the river and the melting snows of far-away mountains. But there was no way for the Egyptians to know this, because they had never traveled so far from their valley. They believed that a powerful river god sent the flood. They prayed to him and gave thanks for his gift.

After they had learned to control the flood and to use the water for their fields, the Egyptians raised more and more food. Soon they had more than they needed. So they learned to store it for the time when crops should fail. After a while they found that they could trade their extra food for other things that they needed, as you will see.

An early invention for lifting water



The great Nile River, with its flooding waters, was useful to the Egyptians in other ways too. It brought them many advantages and led to several important discoveries. Some of these discoveries were so important that they help us even to this day. We owe much to the Egyptians that the Egyptians owed to the Nile River.

The Nile as a water highway

All Egypt stretched along the Nile, as you see on the map on page 47. It was a very narrow country, but it was also a long country, about five hundred miles long. The Egyptians had learned to build boats. They could travel up and down the length of their land, using the river as a highway.

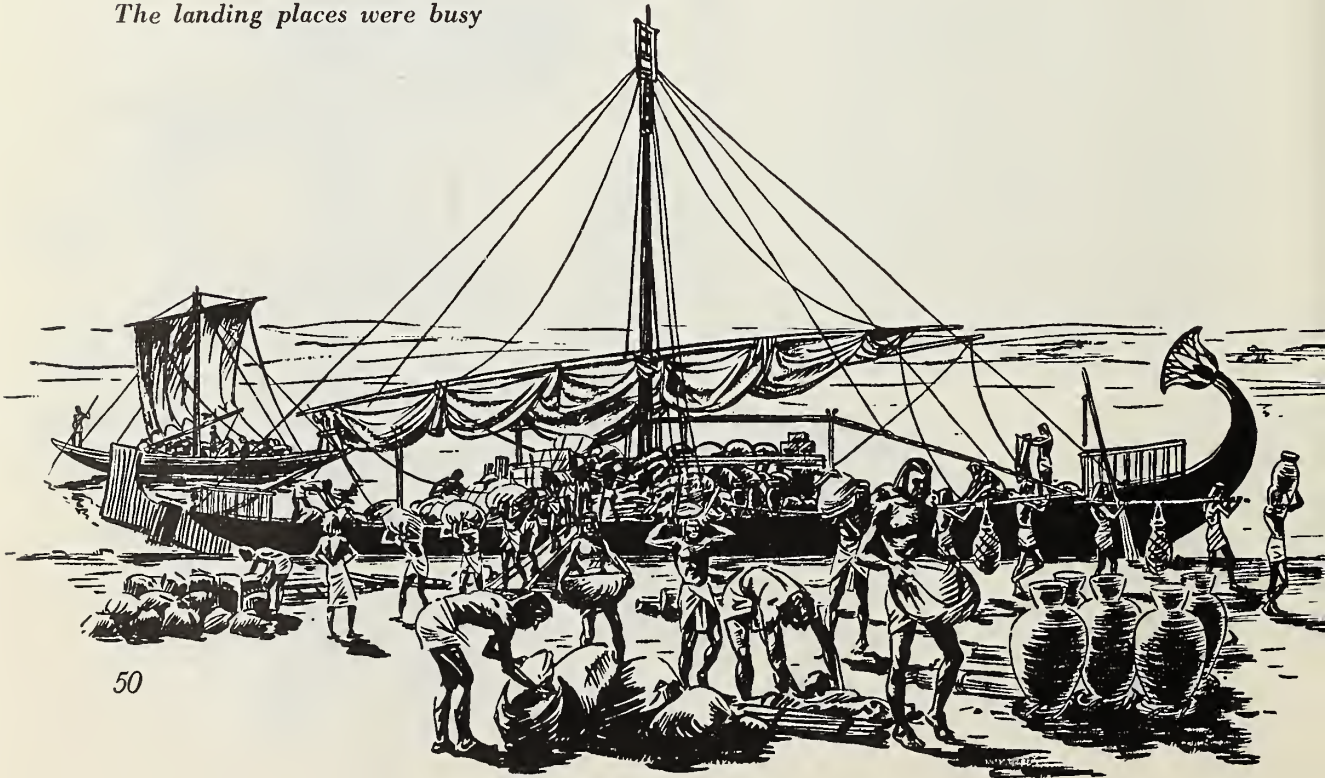
As the years went by, the river came to be crowded with boats of many kinds. There were heavy, flat-bottomed boats that carried goods to market. There were light, graceful, brightly painted

sailboats used only for pleasure and not for carrying things to market.

Of course, the first boats made were small, very small, just big enough for traveling short distances. But when the Egyptians saw how very easy it was to ride on the water, they made their boats larger and larger. They added sails to them. When the wind was low or not from the right direction, the sails were of little use. Then oarsmen took over. They rowed together with long, powerful strokes, driving the boats smoothly over the water.

Brave sailors ventured farther and farther from their home villages. They saw many new places and new things. Naturally they wanted to take home some of the things they saw. People have always wanted to do that, you know. So they traded what they had for what they wanted. They traded because they had not yet learned to use money. The sailors took the new things

The landing places were busy



back to their home villages and brought the tales of their exciting adventures to those who stayed at home. Then everyone knew a little more about the world.

Later some of the most daring sailors reached the Mediterranean and traveled along its shores. On their long journeys the Egyptians met other people who had also ventured as far as the Mediterranean, or who lived along its shores. The people they saw on their journeys must have seemed very strange to the Egyptians, and the Egyptians must have seemed strange to other people. They did not speak the same language. But they must have found ways of making themselves understood, or they could not have traded. Among the important things that the Egyptians brought back to their land were wood and metal. Both metal and wood were scarce in the land of Egypt.

The Nile was alive with boats. The landing places were crowded and busy.

Boats of all kinds, sailing the shining waters, put down goods at one landing place and picked up goods for another. The landing places swarmed with dark-skinned, sweating men bearing great jars of honey or grain, carrying huge cargoes into the boats, groaning under the weight of precious lumber and metal, rolling or pushing enormous stones inch by inch.

Trading with the people of far-away places didn't come about in a year, or two years, or even twenty. Hundreds and hundreds of years had gone by since the first wanderers came to the banks of the Nile River and found the valley good. In those long-ago days changes came very, very slowly.

The floods lead to discoveries

The flooding waters of the Nile helped the Egyptians to learn to survey, or measure, land. To understand this, you must think of the farmers as they went



back to their fields after the waters had gone down. They made unhappy discoveries. They saw that their landmarks had been washed away. No one knew exactly where his fields ended and another man's began. There were arguments, fights, bad feelings.

After much trouble of this kind, wise men began to think about it. They decided that it would be well to make and keep records to show the exact length and width of each man's land. Men called scribes made and kept these records. When the floods removed the landmarks, the scribes could look at the records and tell where the land should be measured off. In that way each man could know what belonged to him.

Your father knows the exact extent of his farm or of the lot on which your house stands. Records something like those kept by Egyptian scribes are still kept today. Isn't it interesting to know that they had their beginnings long ago and in a far-away land?

The calendar, too, had its beginnings long, long ago, in the days of the ancient Egyptians. The flooding waters of the Nile led to the making of the calendar just as it led to surveying. As the Egyptians grew wiser and wiser, they began to notice the changes of the moon. They watched it grow from a tiny crescent of silver to a full, silvery balloon. They saw it grow smaller and smaller until it was only a bit of silver again. As they watched the moon year after year, they saw that these changes came regularly. How often was the moon a full balloon? They found out that there were twelve full moons between the floods of the river. Always twelve full moons.

A year was made up of twelve full moons, or months. About three hundred sixty-five days passed between the highest points of two floods. A day was the time between the rising of the sun one morning and the rising of the sun the next morning. You can see how the calendar grew.

Different Ways of Living along the Nile

Everyone did not live the same kind of life in Egypt in those long-ago days. Everyone does not live the same kind of life there now. That is the way it is here at home, too. Everyone does not live exactly the same kind of life today in this country of ours.

There were rich people and poor people in Egypt, and there were people who were neither rich nor poor. There were servants, and there were slaves. The slaves were those unhappy men and women, and even children, who were owned by other men and women. Some of them were brought to Egypt from

other countries conquered by the Egyptians in war. The slaves had to do the bidding of their owners by day and by night. They got no pay for their long hours of work except their poor food and their scanty clothing.

There were many slaves in Egypt. Some were house slaves who did all the unpleasant work of the house, or waited on their masters, or waved great fans to stir the hot air into something like coolness. There were also land slaves and river slaves and slaves who were builders and carriers of water. Whatever the slaves did, their lives were hard.



Paying taxes

The richest and most powerful of all the Egyptians was the king. It was he who made the laws and appointed men to see that the laws were obeyed. The people thought he was such a magnificent person that they looked upon him as one of their gods. They were afraid to use his name very often. When they spoke of him, they used the name of the great house in which he lived. Since this house was called a *Per-O*, the king came to be called the *Pharaoh*. Sometimes he was also spoken of in words that in our language of today would mean "High Majesty."

The Pharaoh had much power over all the people. Naturally, he didn't have time to do all the things that went with so much power. So he divided the country into large districts and chose men in each district to look after things for him. These men saw to it that the laws were obeyed by everyone, rich and

poor alike. They also acted as judges and as chiefs of the different districts of Egypt.

They made sure, too, that all the people gave as taxes a certain part of the crops they raised or of the things they made. The Pharaoh got the taxes, which is one reason why he was the richest of all the Egyptians.

The Egyptians could not pay their taxes with money, as your parents do. In those days, you remember, they did not have money. So they paid with grain, or cattle, or honey, or linen, or any of a great number of other things. Scribes kept the records of the taxes collected. Some of the pictures left by the Egyptians show the scribes writing down the number of jars of grain or the number of baskets of fruit or vegetables that were brought in payment of taxes. Perhaps arithmetic problems had their beginnings in the collection of taxes.



The Pharaoh and the priests

Besides the Pharaoh, there were others in Egypt who had great power. There were, for example, the members of the Pharaoh's own family. There were the generals of the armies, for the people made war in those days, too. And there were the priests, or holy men. The priests were thought to be so wise and so holy that they knew what the gods were thinking.

The Egyptians had many gods. You already know about their river god. There were also a god of the sun, a god of the moon, and many others besides. The people built temples to their gods, and the Pharaoh chose priests to serve the gods in the temples. The people brought offerings of fruit, vegetables, and honey to the temples. They could not see the gods, of course, but they believed that the gods could see them and their gifts.

We visit two homes on the Nile

Shall we visit a rich man of Egypt in order to get a better understanding of what life was like in those days? Then we shall have to go back several thou-

sand years and travel several thousand miles. But we can make the journey in a surprisingly short time on the good ship *Imagination*. It is a wonderful ship if you can sail it. Let's start at once.

Here we are at the man's home. This man is a relative of the king and in the king's service. We shall think of him as a nobleman, because that is what such an important man would be called today in lands where kings rule.

The nobleman lives on a large estate that borders on the Nile. There are many boats at the landing place of the estate. Some boats are used only for pleasure trips, and others carry goods of different kinds. We pass by storehouses or granaries full of grain such as millet, wheat, and barley. Near by are storehouses where vegetables are kept. Are you surprised to see melons and cabbages, cucumbers and onions? You need not be, because the ancient Egyptians raised such things. Here is a press where the juice of grapes is squeezed out so that wine can be made. Not far away are barns where the tamed farm animals, such as cows and sheep and pigs, are kept.

In the distance we see a park where the nobleman keeps the animals he has caught or trapped. There are deer, lions, panthers, and other wild animals. We have no fear because they are all within the strong, high walls of the park. Pheasants and other birds of bright colors walk proudly about. And here in a shallow ditch, ducks, just common, ordinary ducks, are swimming with

their little ones. They dive and dart about in the water just as ducks have done for thousands of years.

Near at hand is a group of small houses in which the servants live. These houses are nothing at all like the nobleman's home, which is a large and very fine building.

As we come closer to the nobleman's house, we see that it is built of sun-dried bricks and is painted in bright colors. It is not built as our houses are. In our country the yard usually runs around the house. But here the house is built around the yard, or court. The courtyard is fragrant with flowers and green with plants.

How cool and pleasant it seems as we enter, after our walk in the burning sun!

We enjoy the rich perfume of the flowers. We feel the coolness of the green plants, and we notice that slaves are stirring the air with great fans. A servant appears and asks us to follow him. He leads us into a living room.

As we enter, our feet seem to sink into the soft, rich rugs on the floor. We take the chairs offered politely by the nobleman's wife. The legs of the chairs are carved to look like the legs of animals. Some of the legs have claws of metal. The chairs have been skillfully made. They are beautiful, but quite unlike the chairs we make today.

On the walls are colorful paintings. Against the walls stand large, handsome chests filled with fine linen which the women of the family have spun, woven,

In a nobleman's house



and embroidered. In those days chests were very important articles of furniture, because there were no such things as closets.

We look into the other rooms, the dining room and the bedrooms for the different members of the family. Then we are invited to go up to the second floor. To our delight we find that it is open to the air. There are no walls, and the roof is of heavy linen held up by strong posts. We think at once of the awnings which are used at home on houses and shops. By day the awnings here keep out the strong sunlight. But by night they are rolled back and the second floor has only the sky for a roof. No wonder the Egyptians enjoyed studying the stars!

As we sit so comfortably under the awnings, we think that life must be all pleasure and ease for the nobleman. Then we remember that he has many duties to perform for the king. The nobleman has to collect taxes from all the people in his district. He has to weigh or measure the goods on which the taxes are to be paid. He must see that the portions collected for taxes are stored and cared for until they are sent

to the Pharaoh. The nobleman has other duties, too, and all of them take time and care. Yes, the nobleman is a very busy man.

His wife and daughters also have duties. They must look after the home and see that the spinning and weaving are done. Some of that work they must do themselves. They must see to the clothing of the family and to the food. While they do only the most pleasant tasks of the home, they must oversee the servants who do the others. The children have lessons to learn, just as you have. They do not go to school but are taught at home by teachers employed by the nobleman.

Shall we look at a different kind of home, one not so large as this one? Let us visit a farmer who rents his land from the nobleman.

In the doorway of the farmhouse we find the wife of the farmer busily grinding grain into meal between two stones. When she has ground enough meal, she will make bread for her family. She looks up and smiles, a rather timid sort of smile because she is not used to having visitors. But she invites us to come in out of the hot sun.

A farmer's wife grinding grain



How different is this home from the one we have just left! The only furniture is a stool or two, a crude bed made of reeds from the river, and a chest for linen. The chest is finer than the other things. We peek inside. It is full of fine linen. We decide to ask why the farmer's wife wears such poor clothing when she has such fine linen.

The house has only one room. In one of the walls is an opening which serves as a window. The floor is of earth. For that matter, the whole house is of earth or clay which has been made into bricks and baked hard and dry in the sun. If there were to be a sudden shower, the bricks would soften. Then the farmer and his family might find the house in their laps. But they need not worry, for rain seldom falls in Egypt.

Sometimes when the Nile runs very far over its banks, many houses are washed away. But it isn't much trouble

to build others. The sun is so hot and the air is so dry that bricks can be made in a short time.

The farmer has only a little land, and so he uses all of it carefully. It is fortunate that he can raise more than one crop in a year. Otherwise his family might not have enough food. It is fortunate, too, that he can keep a few pigs, a few ducks, and a goat or two. Even then there is never too much of anything. The farmer must give a part of what he raises to the nobleman for rent, a part to the Pharaoh in taxes, and a part to the gods in the temples. You can imagine that, with such tiny farms, there is not very much left.

There is no school for the farmer's children, but they learn many useful things at home. The girls learn as they help their mother in the house. And the boys learn as they work with their father on the little farm.

Great Builders in the Land of Egypt

The Egyptians were the most skillful builders of ancient times. They cut stones into enormous blocks, and they carved stones into huge columns. Many of the buildings for which these stones and columns were used still stand today and are counted among the great wonders of the world.

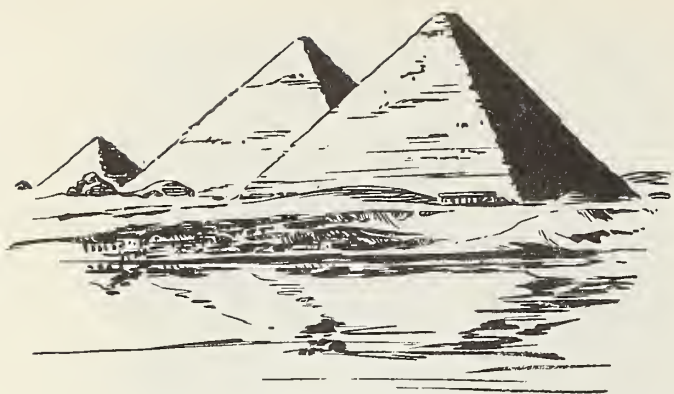
The pyramids

We cannot leave the Nile Valley without making a visit to some of the famous buildings left by the Egyptians. We must certainly see the Great Pyramid, because it is the greatest curiosity in the land of Egypt to all visitors from far-away places. Let's get aboard the good

ship *Imagination* again and sail away down the Nile to the Great Pyramid.

When we see it, we blink our eyes in astonishment. No! There can't possibly be such a building! We stare for a long time and still can't believe what we see. Is there a way to explain how big this pyramid is?

We are told that it is as tall as a modern building of twenty-five stories. It covers as much ground as would be covered by four city blocks, each four hundred feet square. We find it hard to keep such figures in mind as we look at the Great Pyramid. Yet to keep them in mind helps us to understand how enormous this building is.



The pyramid is made of huge blocks of solid stone. We are told that some of these stones weigh four thousand pounds each. We wonder how the Egyptians could have made such a building. They did not have powerful machines to help them, as we have today. It is believed that one hundred thousand people worked to build the Great Pyramid, and that it took them twenty years to do it. Much of the hardest work was done by slaves, who dragged the huge stones to the pyramid and set them in place.

There are other pyramids in Egypt besides the Great Pyramid. Why did the Egyptians build them? That question can be answered. They built them as tombs in which their bodies were to be placed after death.

The Egyptians believed that their bodies would live on and on, forever and ever, if they were properly cared for after death. They learned to preserve the bodies of their dead so that they would remain whole for years and years and years. They treated the body with drugs and spices. They wrapped the arms, the legs, and the head in strong linen, and finally wrapped the whole body in linen.

A body treated in this way is now called a mummy. Many of the large

museums in our country today have one or more of these Egyptian mummies. They are still well preserved.

Now we understand why that farmer's wife had a good chest for fine linen. Even the poorest and humblest people wanted to make sure that their bodies would be well cared for after death.

But to get back to the pyramids. The Egyptians believed that the best way of protecting a body after death was to put it deep into a great tomb. We know that this was a good idea, because the bodies of some of the kings and their families, thousands of years old, have been found in tombs. They are still well preserved. But, of course, not many people of ancient Egypt were rich enough to build such enormous tombs. Only kings built pyramids.

The pyramids have secret rooms and passages. All of these were tightly closed after the body of a dead king or a member of his family had been placed safely inside. No one was supposed to know the secrets of the pyramids except the members of the king's family. Now the secrets are known, because wise men have opened some of these tombs and have studied their contents.

So now we know about the chariot in which the king rode. We know about the throne on which he sat and about the weapons with which he made war. We know about the jewels he gave his wife and how she wore them. We know about the rouge with which she made her cheeks red and about the lipstick with which she painted her lips. We know about the oils with which she kept her skin beautiful and about the perfume she used. All such things have been found in the tombs of kings and

queens of Egypt. The Egyptians placed them there because they believed that they would be enjoyed by the kings and queens, even though they were dead.

Since tombs were so very important, you can understand why kings spent so much of their lives in building them. Each king tried to build a greater and a richer tomb than other kings before him had built.

The pyramids were built while the Nile was flooded. At such times the people could not work in their fields and gardens. At such times, too, it was easier to move the stones because the rushing waters helped carry them along. Some of the stones were loaded on barges and floated down the river. The stones came from quarries in the upper Nile Valley.

For years and years wise men have studied the life of these wonderful Egyptians. They have learned about them from traces of old roads, from their temples, their pyramids, their writings, and their paintings. The paintings, perhaps, tell the clearest story of all. Some of them are so simple that you, too, could read the stories they tell just as you read the story of one of the comic strips in your newspaper.

But there is one thing which even the wisest of men have not yet found out. That is how the Egyptians managed to build their great, lofty pyramids without the help of machines. Perhaps some American boy, when he grows up, will solve that mystery.

Temples to honor the gods

Many of the temples built by the Egyptians also remain to this day. The temples, you remember, were built in honor of the gods. When the people had

had a good harvest, when they had won a victory, or when they wanted to win a victory, they went to the temple to pray and to make special offerings. For other reasons, too, they prayed and made offerings to the gods.

Broad avenues lined with statues along both sides led the way to many of the temples. Some of these huge stone statues are still standing. As you might suppose, they are nothing like the statues that we see in our own parks. Many of them have the bodies of animals and the heads of men. Such statues are called sphinxes.

The largest of the sphinxes has a body more than a hundred feet long. The face is fourteen feet across. The top of

Carved columns in an Egyptian temple



Tall square stone monuments, called obelisks, were sometimes placed near the temples. These were built by order of the Pharaohs. On them were made records of the brave deeds of the men who caused them to be built.

As they grew more and more skillful and more and more civilized, the Egyptians learned to make many fine things. Some of their inventions are as important to us today as they were to the people of long-ago times.

thin strips. The strips were laid close together on a flat surface and other strips were laid crosswise over them. Then the strips were soaked in water and hammered until they stuck together in a sheet. When the papyrus was dry, it would take ink. The ink was a mixture of soot, water, and other things.

Writing is one of the most important inventions the Egyptians gave to us. Before writing was invented, the knowledge of things and of how to do things was often lost. After writing was invented, events could be described and facts could be written down and left for the people who came after.

The very first writing of the Egyptians has not been preserved for us. However, wise men have found writing which goes back thousands of years. The writing makes them believe that pictures were used for ideas. Thus, instead of writing the word moon or man or duck, the Egyptians drew a picture of that object.

As time went on, they put several pictures together to tell what they wanted to tell. Still later, they learned to make signs which stood for certain words or ideas. Finally, they put signs and pictures together to form the oddest kind of writing. Perhaps you can guess what some of the words and ideas are in the Egyptian writing on this page.

[illegible]

For hundreds and hundreds of years people who found Egyptian writing on paper and on monuments could not read it. Yet they were sure that the writing meant something.

More than a hundred years ago, a large stone was found at one of the mouths of the Nile River. On this stone was Greek writing which wise men could read, and Egyptian writing which, of course, they could not read. Here was a puzzle to solve.

Wise men worked for twenty years on that puzzle. Imagine that! And finally they solved it. They found that the Greek writing and the Egyptian writing told the same thing. Since they could read the Greek writing, they finally were able to read the Egyptian writing, too. After they had learned to read it, they were also able to read what the Egyptians had carved on stone and had written on their long scrolls.

The stone is called the Rosetta Stone.✕ It is now in a museum in London. Copies of it are in some of the museums in our own country. Everyone likes to look at it, and everyone must wonder at the wisdom of the men who learned to read it.

Because wise men have been able to read the Egyptian writing, they have found many interesting stories. For example, there is a story much like the one of Cinderella. There is another which tells how a lion saved the life of a mouse, and of how that same mouse later saved the lion's life. Is it not interesting to find that these people of long ago wrote stories much like those you enjoy today? Sometime the story of Egyptian kings and queens and their wars and victories will also interest you.



One of the most important inventions of the Egyptians was the making of beautiful glass. They were not satisfied to make just ordinary clear glass. They made it in colors. Vases, beads, perfume bottles, figures of animals, and jars, all of beautiful colored glass, have been found in the tombs of the Pharaohs and in the ruins of ancient buildings.

Objects of copper and bronze also have been found. In very early days the adventurers brought back from the desert a metal which we call copper. And the Egyptians discovered that copper is a very useful metal. It softens in fire so that it can be shaped into many different things. It first was used for making tools, and then for pots, jars, vases, and ornaments.

In time the early Egyptians mixed copper with tin and in this way made bronze. When bronze grows cold, it becomes so very hard that even stone is broken against it. With bronze the Egyptians made things that were even stronger and more beautiful than those they made with copper.

There is not room enough in this book to tell of all the things the Egyptians discovered or invented. They learned to make some things which have not been made since. That is because the skills they used have been lost forever. Still they left many things and many inventions that people enjoy even today.

The History Workshop

Some things to talk about

Have you ever lived on or near a river which rises up occasionally and floods the land? What are some of the sights you have seen when this happens? How do these floods affect the lives of the people who live on or near the river? How did the floods in the Nile River Valley affect the lives of the people who lived there? Do people in the United States today act in the same way the early Egyptians did when there is a big river flood? If you have never seen a flood, discuss floods with an older person or your teacher. When you have learned a lot of things about floods, discuss the ways in which they change the lives of people. Why is it that most people today, in any country, are not so afraid of floods as the early Egyptians were?

What things can be seen in Egypt today that tell us how the people lived there in earlier times? What things can be seen that tell us they had more tools and more ways of doing things than did the earlier people who lived in caves? Why would it have been impossible for the early cave people to build pyramids and sphinxes like those in Egypt? Do you think the pyramids could have been built without using wheels?

Some things to do

Think of how big and heavy this book of yours would be if it were written in ancient Egyptian writing on papyrus! Divide your class into groups and let each group learn something about the way paper is made today, and about some of the ways in which it is used. One group might make a list of the materials used for making paper. Plan a class discussion about all the things we can do with paper. How many of these things could be done if we had to use papyrus instead of paper?

Divide your class into groups and plan pictures of the lands of ancient times. You can get some ideas for pictures from this book and from the books that are mentioned at the bottom of this page. You might plan a wall decoration of the drawings you have made. Some members of the class could make clay models of things in Egypt that we have talked about. Try to make these models show things about the way the early Egyptians lived.

Supply the right word

Write the sentences given below. Fill the places where the xxxxx's are with words that you remember from reading about the Egyptians.

1. Egypt was ruled by a king called xxxxx.
2. The Egyptians made a record for telling time in years and months, called a xxxxx.
3. The writing paper of the Egyptians was called xxxxx.
4. By mixing copper and tin, the Egyptians made xxxxx.
5. A body preserved for a long time in a way used by the Egyptians is called a xxxxx.

Books to read

Here are some interesting books that tell about the life of the people who lived in Egypt in earlier times. If there are some special things that you would like to find out about these people, you can find out many of them from these books. The books mentioned here will also help you with your History Workshop activities. *How the Present Came from the Past*, by Margaret Wells. *Sokar and the Crocodile*, by Alice Howard. *Children of Ancient Egypt*, by Louise Lamprey. *Boy of the Pyramids*, by Ruth F. Jones. *Our Way of Life Begins*, by Ruth M. Robinson and Mary Emma Harris. *Wonder Tales of the Ancient World*, by James Baikie.

The Land of the Fertile Crescent





The Land of the Fertile Crescent

Eastward from Egypt to the Fertile Crescent

The Egyptians were not the only early people to become civilized. There were people of other lands who learned new and better ways of living at about the same time. For hundreds of years these people didn't know about one another. They finally became acquainted through trading.

Some of the people with whom the Egyptians traded lived in a land that has been named the "Fertile Crescent." It was so named because it had much good, fertile soil and because it was shaped like a crescent moon. When the moon is in the first quarter, you know,

it is crescent-shaped. You call it the new moon. The maps on pages 66 and 67 show the land of the Fertile Crescent. Look first at the map on page 67.

Part of the Fertile Crescent is rough and has poor soil. But there are green valleys. To the east is a great plain through which flow two mighty rivers, the Tigris and the Euphrates. The plain is as green as the valley of the Nile. It is dotted with villages. Here and there are big, noisy cities, full of people and busy with trade. This part of the Fertile Crescent is sometimes called the "Land of the Two Rivers."



In some ways the story of the people of the Land of the Two Rivers is much like the story of the Egyptians. In other ways the stories of these peoples are very different.

How the Land of the Two Rivers was like Egypt

There was good reason why Egypt and the Land of the Two Rivers should be much alike. Both were watered by floods. Each year, you remember, the Nile watered the land of Egypt. Each year the long, winding Euphrates and the shorter Tigris flooded the plain through which they flowed. Like the Nile, these two rivers had their beginnings in mountains. Their floods also came each year, but a little earlier than the flood of the Nile.

Each year by early May the waters of the Tigris and the Euphrates were the color of chocolate, rich and brown. The soil they carried had colored them so. As the waters grew quieter and the rivers settled into their beds, the soil was deposited over the plain. These

floods had come for so many hundreds of years that this rich soil lay deep over the land.

Wandering herdsmen came into the plain in search of food and water for their flocks and a place to rest. Very likely they thought they had come to the most beautiful land in the world. And no wonder! The sun shone brightly over wide stretches of deep grass gay with many flowers. Tall palm trees waved their long, feathery leaves in the warm air. The plain was perhaps even lovelier and richer than the valley of the Nile. The land supplied plenty of food and pasture, and the rivers were full of fish.

At first the days passed happily for the herdsmen. Then the floods came, and the rivers rose higher and higher. Perhaps some of the herdsmen rolled up their tents and left that lovely land, never to return. But some of them stayed and cared for their flocks as well as they could while the rivers were high. When the waters had gone, the herdsmen again grazed their flocks



in the fresh, green pastures. In time those herdsmen became farmers. They plowed the ground and raised crops.

Only a little rain fell on the plain. After each flood the earth hardened and cracked under the heat of the sun. The plants withered and turned yellow. But the farmers knew what to do. Using bags made of animal skins, they carried water to the withering plants.

If those farmers had been lazy, they would have let their crops die. If they had been dull, they would have gone on carrying water from the rivers. But they were neither lazy nor dull. They built reservoirs in which to store water so that they could carry it more easily to the thirsty plants. They dug canals and ditches to bring water to their fields and gardens. In time they found

Two Maps Showing the Fertile Crescent

The map on this page gives you a picture of the Fertile Crescent and the country around it. You can see why traders going from Egypt to Babylonia would rather make a longer journey through the Fertile Crescent than to cross the desert. And it is easy to understand why Babylonia is called the Land of the Two Rivers. The same lands that are shown here are shown within the solid white lines on the map of a much larger part of the globe on the opposite page. You can see, of course, that the part inside the broken white lines is Egypt, which you have already visited. What kind of country lies north and east of the Fertile Crescent?



that they could raise several crops at different times of the year. They raised many grains. Some people believe that the first wheat was raised by the farmers of the Land of the Two Rivers.

As the years went by, the people of the land raised more food than they needed. They built granaries in which to store their extra grain. After more years had gone by, they traded their extra stores for other things that they needed or wanted. They made boats by sewing the skins of animals together to make bags and filling them with air. Then they used the rivers as highways. Some people gave up farming and became sailors and traders.

As the people made larger and better boats, they ventured farther and farther away from their home villages. Finally some of the sailors and traders ventured into the land of the Egyptians and traded with them. By that time hundreds and hundreds of years had passed since the first wandering herdsmen had come into that beautiful land and found it a good place to live.

How the Land of the Two Rivers was unlike Egypt

So far it has seemed that the people of the Land of the Two Rivers lived the same kinds of lives as the Egyptians. But they did not. There was good reason why there should be many differences, as you shall see.

The first people of the Land of the Two Rivers had not been quite so fortunate in their choice of a homeland as the Egyptians had been. Egypt was not easy to reach because of the deserts, the Mediterranean Sea, and the rough mountains. Of course, some new people had gone into Egypt as the years went by. But there were never so many people coming into Egypt at any one time that they caused trouble for the people who were already there.

The valleys of the Tigris and the Euphrates were easily reached from the near-by lands. They attracted many tribes besides the first ones that came. Tribes came into the lower part of the valleys from the direction of the high, snowy mountains and from less rich

parts of the Fertile Crescent. Wherever they came from, whenever they came, they wanted to stay on good, rich land.

Sometimes the new tribes drove out the ones that were already comfortably settled. And sometimes the new tribes pushed the older tribes farther and farther away from the rivers. One tribe conquered another tribe and was conquered in turn by the one it had conquered, or by another new tribe. For hundreds of years wars were fought over possession of the land.

The wars were bad. Yet because of them people learned new things. Even those who were pushed out of their homes got some help from those who pushed them out. They learned new

and better ways of doing the things they already knew how to do. So it came about that all the people grew better crops, raised finer animals, spun and wove better cloth, and made finer tools.

This story will not tell about all the tribes that lived in the Land of the Two Rivers. There were so many of them, and they all had such strange names! Even men who spend all their lives studying history do not always find it easy to remember all the names. We shall follow the history of only one of these tribes, the one that is best known to the world today. The people of this tribe were called Babylonians. They lived in Babylonia, which is near the meeting place of the two rivers.

The Story of the Ancient Babylonian People

Records which tell of the lives of the Babylonians go back six thousand years. Think of it! Things that those people made and accounts that they wrote are still in the world today. Of course, no one knows how long they had lived in their valley before they learned how to write.

It is certain that the Babylonians lived simply at first, as all of the early people lived. When they had learned to raise better crops, however, they wanted better homes and other things that would make life more pleasant. Nearly all people are like that.

The Babylonians had some difficulty at first finding material to build good homes. There were few trees, except date palms, in their land. The date palms grew in great numbers, and people planted them by the hundreds. The fruit of the date palms is the

good, sweet date you like to eat. The Babylonians of long ago liked dates, too. They ate them as they came from the trees, and they made bread and wine of them. They used the long leaves of the trees to make baskets. They used the bark to make rope. But they could not use the wood for building because it was not strong enough.

Stone is good building material, as good as lumber, or even better. But there was no stone in the valley except that which had been buried deep in the soil brought by the floods of the two great rivers. Such stone could not be easily reached.

No stone! No lumber! What could the people use to build their houses? There was plenty of clay in the valley. The people made bricks of it. At first they made just ordinary bricks and dried and hardened them in the sun. Later

they baked the bricks in the fire so that they would last longer. As years went by, they learned to color and glaze them so that they were bright and shiny. In time, Babylonia came to be known as the "Land of Brick."

The Babylonian business men

While the Babylonians were building better homes, they were doing other things which made living more comfortable and civilized. They made fine woolen and linen cloth. They made beautiful articles of leather and wove soft, colorful rugs. After many years of hard work they had more of all these things than they needed, just as they had more grain than they needed.

Then they did something that other people of the world had not done. They became business men. Other peoples had traded, as you know. The Babylonians traded more widely and wisely. They thought of better ideas for carry-

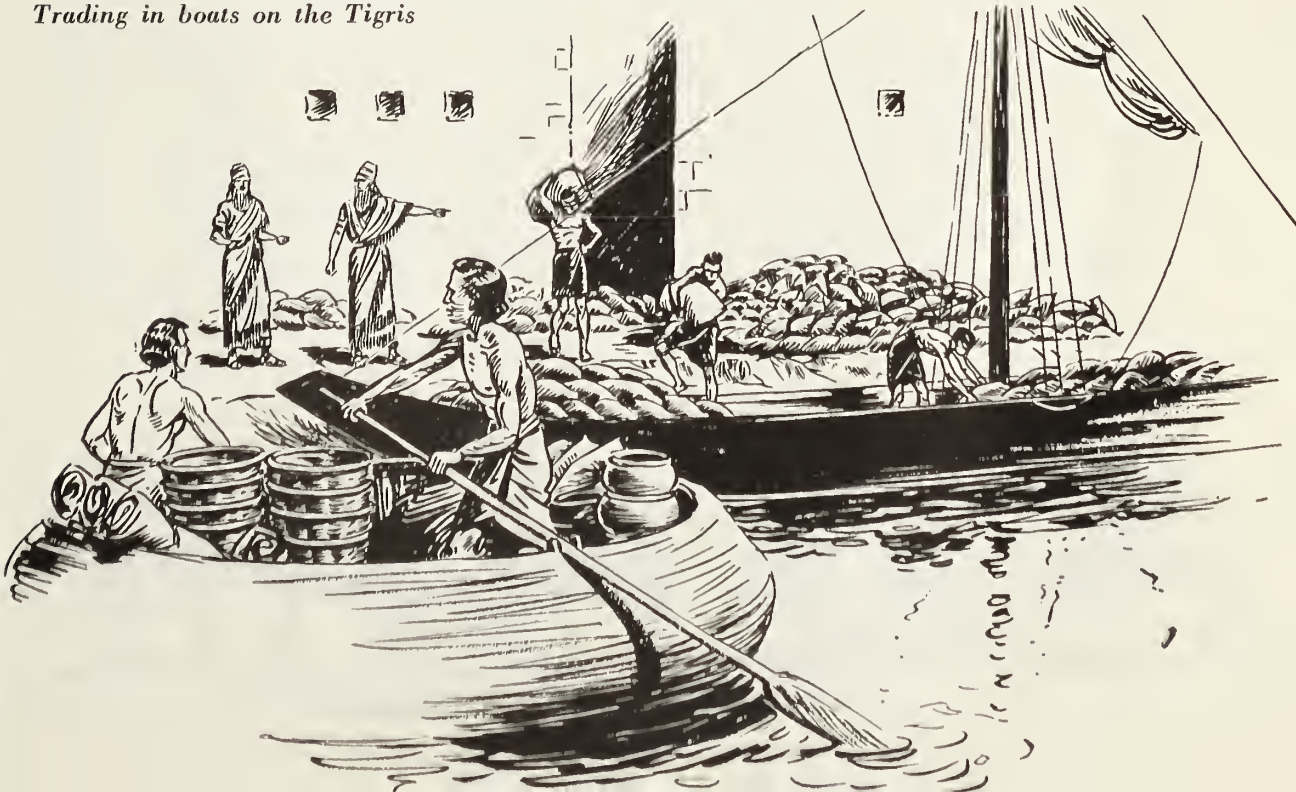
ing on their trade. Some of these ideas were so good that they are still used.

Today business men are those men who make their living not by making things or by raising crops or animals, but by buying and selling the things that other people have made or raised. They also sell services of many different kinds. For example, they sell telephone service and heating and lighting service. They sell insurance. They work in banks.

The business men of Babylonia did not do all those things, of course. Still, they made a very good beginning in business. Let's see how they did it.

The beginning was simple enough. The merchants piled their boats high with grain, which they had got by trading with people who raised it. They traveled up and down the rivers, looking for people with whom they might trade. They brought back the things they got in the trade and gave them to

Trading in boats on the Tigris



people at home in exchange for more grain with which to begin trading all over again. After a while they traded more than grain. They loaded their boats with leather and cloth and dates and rope and baskets. They brought back new and wonderful things.

What were some of these wonderful things? There were wood and stone, such as had never before been seen in their homeland; strange metals, such as copper and silver and gold; and cloth of different weaves and colors.

The people at home were pleased with all these new and different things. They were eager to find uses for them. The merchants brought ideas as well as goods, for they had seen what other people had done with metal, with wood, and with other things. They brought ideas to the workers who made things with their hands. After a while these Babylonian workers grew very skillful at making useful tools, as well as fine jewelry and ornaments, of the metals. They wove new kinds of cloth and new kinds of rugs.

Shops were opened all over Babylonia—big shops and little shops and middle-sized shops. The streets were busy with trade. Villages grew into cities. Cities grew larger and larger. They grew busier and noisier, too.

Not all the Babylonian merchants traveled by water. Some traveled by

land, with donkeys to carry their goods. They led or drove long caravans of these sturdy little creatures, heavily loaded, back and forth through the desert. The journey was hard for both the men and the donkeys. The hot sun shone down upon them. Hot waves of air came up from the sands. Sometimes there were terrible sandstorms. There were not many oases in the desert where travelers might rest and refresh themselves. They had to carry water on the journey, and they had to be careful how they used it. They didn't dare to waste a drop.

Yet nothing really discouraged those traders of ancient days. They made the same weary journeys again and again. Some of them grew very wealthy and hired other men to make the trips for them. Some of them grew very wealthy and still went on with their trading and traveling. They didn't want to give up such exciting, adventurous journeying, even though they knew there was danger.

Finally some of the merchants from Babylonia reached the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. There they met many Egyptians who also had been traveling and trading. Some Babylonians even went into Egypt to trade. You can imagine what strange stories they told about dark-skinned Egyptians and their wonderful land.





Trading in far-off Egypt

Problems of the merchants

As the trade of the merchants grew, their problems grew, as well. Trading near home had been simple enough, but trading with strangers was not so simple. Often the Babylonians did not speak the same language as the people with whom they traded. Then they had to make signs and motions. Sometimes they could not make themselves understood at all. At such times, of course, no trade could be made.

The problem of language was hard enough. But the problem of measuring and weighing things was even harder. The people of different lands had different ways of measuring and weighing. No two ways were alike. Standards were needed so that weights and measures would be fair to everyone.

The Babylonians set standards. For liquids they had been using a jar of a certain size, which belonged to their king. They made the king's jar a standard for liquids. For weight they decided on the pound. Those standards are still used today in our own country and in many others besides.

There was also the problem of worth. Nowadays we think of the worth of a thing in money. For example, you think of the worth of your baseball, your bat, your skates, your books, in money, or in what they cost you or your parents. "How much did it cost?" is a very common question with you and with everyone else. Or people may ask, "What is it worth?" Of course, the worth of things cannot always be measured in money. Still, money is a good standard of worth. It is also



A scribe keeping records for a merchant

handy, because a very large sum can be carried in a very small space.

The merchants of Babylonia didn't have money. They had to carry along the things that they got in trade. You can imagine that they had heavy loads to carry, especially if they had received iron or stone in trade. In time they found an easier way to trade.

They melted precious metals such as silver and copper and gold. They made small bars of the metals and stamped them and used them for money. Officers of the king made sure that these metal bars were of a certain size and weight. Thus people who got them in exchange for goods were sure that they were being honestly treated.

Merchants of our times keep records or accounts of what they have bought or sold and of the profits they have made. They have to keep an account of each sale they make in order that

they may know whether they are making a profit or not. Keeping accounts and records began in the long-ago days of the Babylonian merchants.

The Babylonian merchants didn't have paper on which to keep their records. They had no pencils or pens and no ink. They made tablets of clay and wrote on the tablets.

When a merchant had made a trade or a sale, he simply reached into a small jar of clay, took out a handful, and patted it into a piece the shape of a bun. And there was the tablet! He wrote on this with a pointed reed or piece of metal. Then the tablet was dried in the sun or baked in the fire. And there was a record!

If he wanted to give a receipt for the goods he had received, he made another tablet of clay and wrote on it. He gave that to the man from whom he had received the goods. Your father

has very likely received many receipts when he has paid his bills, or when he has returned goods to the store. How do you think he would like a receipt written on clay?

Many of these clay tablets have been found in the ruins of Babylonian cities. It must have been very difficult for the merchants of long-ago times to keep so many tablets in order. Some employed scribes who were well trained in writing and in keeping records in order.

Have you been wondering how the writing was done? The Babylonians didn't have an alphabet of twenty-six letters with which to spell words. They used signs. There were between three and four hundred of these signs, and learning to read and write them was not easy. When they were made on clay, they looked something like wedges. Such writing is called cuneiform writing. *Cuneiform* means "wedge-shaped."

The merchants also learned to add, to subtract, to multiply, and to divide. They counted by tens, hundreds, and thousands. They had multiplication tables. Perhaps the boys and girls of that day found those tables hard to learn.

Nowadays a business man signs his name on receipts and orders for goods, and on many other business papers. But the merchants of ancient days didn't sign their names. They used seals. Each man had his own particular seal, which was different from those of all other men. The seal was usually made of stone or of metal. Sometimes it was worn on a ring. You can see where

people got the idea of seal rings, which are worn to this day. Sometimes the seal was tied to a chain and worn around the neck. Seals of other kinds are still used in our country. Perhaps you have seen the seal of the United States on paper money. Perhaps you have also seen the seal of your state or your city. Such seals had their beginnings in the days of clay tablets.

The busy and colorful cities

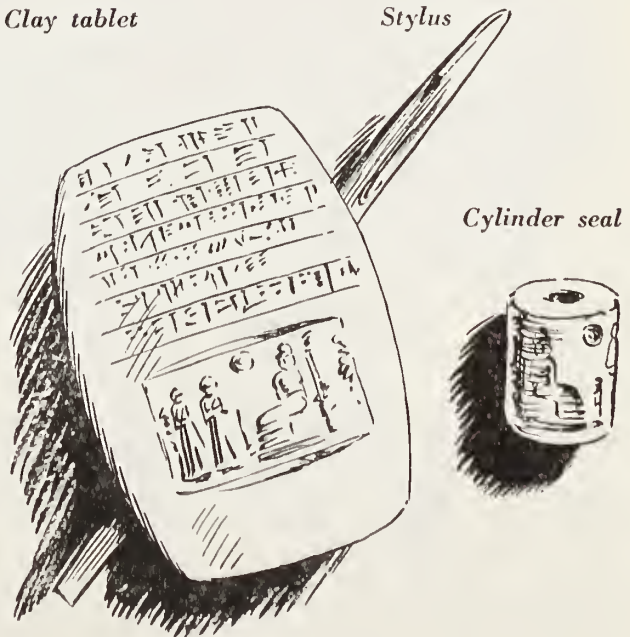
In the lands where farming is more important than business, cities grow slowly. In the lands where business is more important than farming, cities grow rapidly. In Babylonia, farming never lost its importance. But making things and trading, buying, and selling also became important, so that cities grew very large.

The ancient cities of Babylonia did not look anything like our cities today. Our buildings are made of lumber and stone and brick and steel. They have heavy doors of wood or steel and glass windows. The buildings of Babylonia,

Clay tablet

Stylus

Cylinder seal





even the very tallest, were of brick. Our streets are wide, and they are crowded with automobiles and busses and trucks. People on foot use the sidewalks except at the street crossings. In the ancient cities there were no sidewalks. All the people—men on donkeys, men, women, and children on foot, proud noblemen in their chariots—crowded together in the narrow streets.

A trip through a Babylonian city

Let's go back several thousand years and walk around in one of the Babylonian cities. We shall walk slowly, partly because the streets are narrow and crooked and rough, and partly because we want to see all we can.

We push eagerly along through the crowds. We listen to the strange language of the people, but we cannot understand a single word of what they are saying. At some of the shops we stop to look at the goods, but we find it very difficult to buy anything. The things are not displayed behind plate-glass windows or spread out neatly on counters. They are stacked in heaps, higgledy-piggledy, all over the shops. The merchants offer to show us their beautiful rugs, their bags of leather, their jewelry, their copper jars. We look at them, but we cannot buy because we do not know their worth. We cannot join in the noisy bargaining.

Here at the turn of a street several men stand talking. Some of them have shaved heads and faces. Some of them have curly black hair and long, flowing beards. All of them are dark, and none of them look like the people at home. Over there a group of men gather around a merchant who has just

returned from a long trip into Egypt. He sits upon a weary-looking donkey and answers the questions that the men are eagerly asking. They are glad to get news of the outside world. We cannot understand what the merchant is saying to them, so we move on.

Suddenly everybody clears the way for a nobleman in a brightly colored chariot. He looks very proud as he rides along. He looks rather uncomfortable, too, as he goes bumping over the rough streets.

As we walk on, we look more closely at the houses which line the streets. Some of them seem to be rather new. Others look very old because the walls have begun to crumble. Perhaps they are not so old as they look. The bricks of which these crumbling walls were built were not baked.

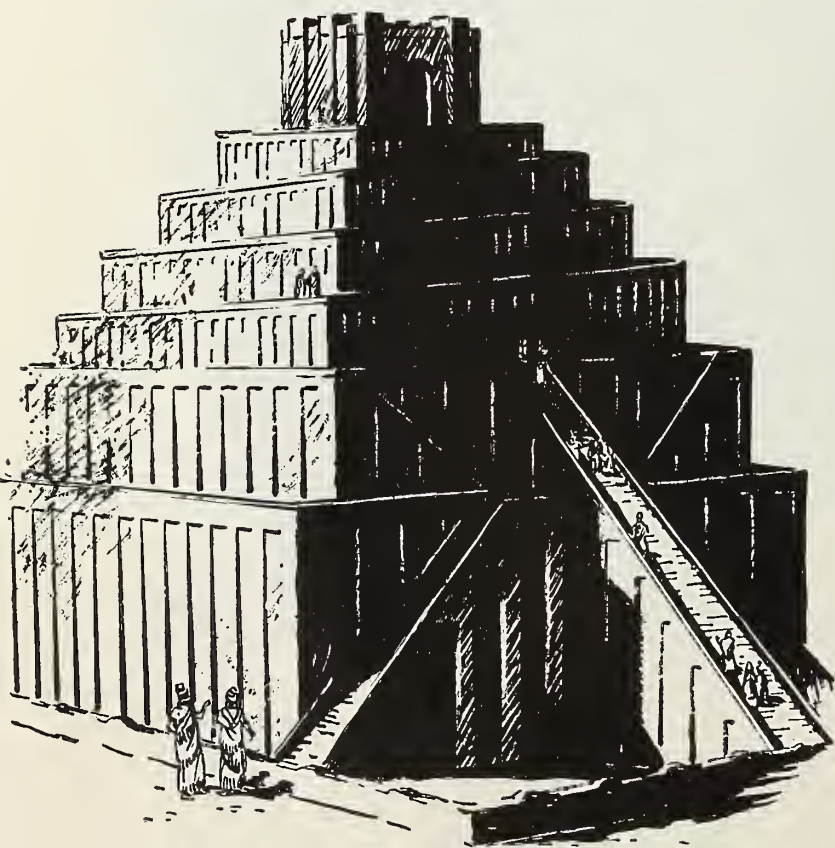
Fuel is so scarce in this land that only the rich people can afford houses of fire-baked bricks. The poorer people must make their homes of bricks that have been dried in the sun. If the walls were not protected by a plaster of mud and straw, they would not last long. Even so, they will crumble after a time. However, the owners do not worry too much when their houses start falling apart. They simply level them to the ground, flatten them out, and build new ones over the ruins.

Even the better houses do not seem very pleasant to us. The windows are only openings in the walls. The doors are not doors at all, but archways. Many of the homes, like those of the Egyptians, are built around courtyards. We can look through the openings and into the courtyards, which are bright with flowers and plants.

On and on we go through the streets. At last we come to a temple. The bricks of which the temple is built have been more carefully made than those of which the homes are built. All the bricks used on the outside are colored and glazed. Some have been arranged to make patterns or pictures.

How high is this temple? It is as high perhaps as one of our eight-story buildings. The temple is built like a pile of huge blocks reaching up and up. At the very top is a tower. The blocks of the temple are solid masses of brick strong enough to support great weight. After the first one, the blocks grow smaller as the temple grows higher. We find a great staircase and climb hundreds of steps to a winding ramp which leads us round and round and round the rest of the way to the tower.

A Babylonian temple



We follow the long ramp and enter the tower through a beautifully arched doorway. There is a reason for the arch.

Builders had to find a way to make doorways through brick walls. Without support of some kind the brick walls around an opening would fall in and go tumbling down in a heap. After trying one way and another to make their walls strong around the doorways, the builders discovered a way to make arches. The Babylonians were probably the first people in the world to build arches.

This temple was built to one of the gods of the Babylonians. It may have been built to the god of this particular city, or to any one of the other gods worshiped by the people. The Babylonians had once lived in a mountain country. They thought that the mountain tops were the homes of their gods.

This city is on flat land, so the temples were built as high as possible to please the gods. Priests served in the temple, and the people brought offerings there just as the Egyptians did in their temples.

In the tower of the temple the priests studied the skies and learned about the movements of the sun, the moon, and the stars. They had noted the changes of the moon, as had the Egyptians. In time, they divided the year into months and the months into weeks. Then they divided the day into hours and the hours into minutes. They made clocks to mark the passage of time.

These clocks were of two kinds. One was a shadow clock



A Babylonian schoolroom

called a sundial. The other was a water clock which could be used at times when the sundial was useless—at night or on dark days when the sun was not shining.

Let's go on with our trip. By and by we come to a library, which is also a large building. It contains many books, all of them written on tablets of clay. Imagine going to the library and bringing home a basket of bricks to read! That is what you would have done if you had lived in Babylonia.

Each brick or clay tablet was numbered to show its place in the whole story, much as the pages of our books are numbered. Many of these clay tablets are still in the world today. Wise men have learned how to read them.

The Babylonians had schools as well as libraries. The schools were open to all children, boys and girls, rich and poor. In Egypt, you remember, a nobleman's children had more schooling than the children of poor people.

School children of Babylonia spent much of their time in learning to write. That was not easy, since they had to learn between three and four hundred signs to be able to write well. Learning to read what had been written must have been just as difficult. Clay tablets bearing the work of school children have been found in the ruins of early Babylonian cities. We can't help but wonder if those boys and girls had homework to do, or whether they learned all their lessons at school under the stern eye of the priest who was their teacher.

Now we have come to the wall that runs all around the city. It is a great, thick wall of brick, and it was built to keep out enemies who might come to attack the city. In some places this wall is as wide as the street. Most of the wall was built by slaves who got nothing for their labor but poor food and clothing.

There are many gates in the wall. Above them are watch towers where

soldiers stand guard. No stranger may enter the gates without permission from these guards. We want to get out and go back to our own land. We slip quietly past the guard, hurry through the gate, and come safely back home.

First written laws in Babylonia

Many great kings ruled over Babylonia during the hundreds of years of its greatness. One of the greatest of these was named Hammurabi. While he ruled, Babylon became the most splendid city in that part of the world. And it was during his reign that all the people of the Land of the Two Rivers became known as Babylonians.

Wise men believe that the laws of Hammurabi were among the first laws to be written down for the people anywhere in the world. The very first laws were not written. They were made by the leaders of early tribes, you remember, so that people would live together more peacefully.

In the Land of the Two Rivers there were many, many different tribes. All these different tribes made different laws. Often, when one tribe conquered another, new laws were made. The con-

quered people were not told about these laws. So, of course, it sometimes happened that men and women were punished for breaking a law about which they had never even heard.

King Hammurabi thought that was unfair. When he came to the throne of Babylonia, he collected all the laws of the land. He set wise men to studying them. He told these men to select the best laws and bring them to the king.

When that had been done, the king ordered the laws to be cut on a huge block of stone. Then he had copies of the laws made on tablets of clay. The clay tablets were sent to all the cities of his kingdom.

There were laws for the rich and laws for the poor. Slaves had no rights at all under the laws. That was bad. But there were also good laws. One said that children whose parents were dead should be properly cared for. One said that poor people should pay smaller taxes than rich people. There were many laws about trading and farming. The important thing about Hammurabi, however, was that he had the laws written and placed where people could read them and know what they were.

Other People Who Lived in the Fertile Crescent

You are about to make a visit to a part of the world that has served as a passageway from one country to another. It is that part of the Fertile Crescent between the great plain with the two rivers and the valley of the Nile.

Let us look at the map before we start on our journey. Find the land of the Egyptians and the land of the Babylonians. Find the desert that lies be-

tween them. It was this desert over which Egyptian and Babylonian merchants made many difficult journeys.

After many years the merchants decided that it would be better to go around that desert. By that time they knew enough about their part of the world to find a way. Instead of going across the desert, they went in a wide half-circle to the north. That half-circle



Herdsmen watching the traders

became the passage way between these countries. Look at the map again and trace the journey. You can see that the distance is much greater. But the journey was safer.

There was water on the land for the men and their animals. There was food to be had. For hundreds and hundreds of years, herdsmen had wandered over that land with their flocks of sheep and of goats. Few of the herdsmen had become farmers, because so much of the land was not fit for farming. Parts of it were rough. So the herdsmen wandered from green valley to green valley, knowing little and caring little about the rest of the world.

You can imagine that those herdsmen were puzzled when the Babylonian merchants first wandered into their country.

Little by little, however, they became interested in the merchants. And they became very much interested in the goods carried on the backs of the donkeys that made up the long caravans. In time the herdsmen were glad to trade their extra stores of food for the goods carried by the merchants. After many, many years some of the herdsmen became traders themselves.

The herdsmen of this land belonged to many different tribes. The two that are best known to our world of today are the Hebrews and the Phoenicians. As you read on, you will discover why these people are still remembered.

The story of the Hebrews

The whole story of the Hebrews is told at great length in the Old Testament of the Bible. You have heard or read parts of it. You probably remember reading the names of some of the

great leaders—Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, David. There are many others. The story of these people is so long that it cannot all be told here. Only a small part will be told.

Abraham was the first of the great Hebrew leaders. For that reason he is often called “Father of the Hebrews.” At that time most people believed in many different gods. But Abraham was sure that there was only one God. His God was not a god of the river, or of the sun, or of the moon, or of the mountains, or of the sea. His God was the God of all things.

At last Abraham decided to leave the home of his fathers, which was in Babylonia, and go to a place where he could worship his God in peace. Other people believed as he did. So Abraham gathered all these people together, and with them their flocks and herds. He led them far away to the land of Canaan. Canaan was a rough and rugged part of the Fertile Crescent.

Isaac, a son of Abraham, became the leader after his father. And then came Jacob, a son of Isaac. Jacob had twelve sons whom he loved very dearly. But he loved Joseph more than all the others. The eleven brothers of Joseph became jealous because their father loved him so much. They wanted to be rid of their brother. So they sold him as a slave to Egyptian traders and told their father that Joseph had been killed by wild beasts.

Years and years went by, and the brothers had almost forgotten about the great wrong they had done. Then hard times came to the people of Canaan. For several years their crops had failed. The grass on which the flocks fed had withered and died. The people were without food. What was to be done?

News had come that the Egyptians had plenty of grain, plenty of everything. So the brothers of Joseph were sent by their father into Egypt to buy food for the starving people.

In the years that had passed since Joseph was sold as a slave, he had become a great man in Egypt. Though he had been poor and friendless in a strange land, he was so good and wise that people trusted him. In time even the great Pharaoh trusted Joseph and put him in charge of the granaries. Imagine the feelings of those brothers when they went into Egypt and found that their brother was one of the highest officers of the king! Probably they were frightened, thinking Joseph surely would put them to death.

Joseph's brothers buy food in Egypt



Joseph forgave his brothers for the wrong they had done. He sold them the food that was needed, and he did more than that. He went to the Pharaoh and asked that the Hebrews be allowed to come into Egypt to live. He said there was enough food in the Nile Valley for the Egyptians and the Hebrews. The Pharaoh agreed that there was. He told Joseph to send for his people.

So the Hebrews went into Egypt and lived there for many years. All might have gone well for many more years, but a different Pharaoh came to the throne of Egypt. He feared that the Hebrews might grow strong enough to take the land away from the Egyptians. So he made slaves of the Hebrew people. He made them cut the wood and carry the water, plant the grain and harvest the crops, make the bricks and build the temples. He ordered his officers to punish all those Hebrews who were slow at their work. He ordered that they be fed very little.

After a time the Pharaoh thought of another way to be cruel to the unhappy people. He ordered that the first-born boy of every Hebrew family be killed.

You may have heard the story of one Hebrew mother who couldn't bear such a thought. She put her baby son into a basket of reeds and sent the basket floating down the river. There the baby was found by the Pharaoh's own daughter. She gave him the name Moses and brought him up as her son.

As Moses grew up, he had everything he could wish for, but he was not happy. His thoughts were always with his own people and on their suffering. Moses thought he had to do something to help them. Finally he decided to lead the

Hebrews out of Egypt. Without the Pharaoh's permission they set out for the land of Canaan, which they had thought of as the "Promised Land."

There is another story telling how, during this journey, Moses went up into the mountains and stayed a long time. When he came back, he brought some tablets of stone on which were written the laws the people should follow. We know these laws as the Ten Commandments. They were simple laws and good laws. They are still good laws. One of them says, "Thou shalt not steal." One says, "Thou shalt not kill." One says, "Thou shalt not bear false witness," which means that you should not tell anything against anyone that is not true. Perhaps you have learned all of the Ten Commandments.

The Commandments gave the people new courage. They went on more hopefully. Though the journey lasted for forty years, they finally reached the Promised Land. So the story had a happy ending for all except Moses. He died just before the Hebrews reached the Promised Land.

There are many other stories about the Hebrews. The most important thing for us to remember about them, however, is that they were helpful in passing on the ideas of other people. Their greatest gift to the people of our time is the Bible and the belief that there is only one God.

The story of the Phoenicians

The Phoenicians were the great sailors of ancient times. But they had not always been sailors. You remember that it was a long time before the early people learned to make boats in which to ride

on the water. Like all the early people, the Phoenicians were at first herdsmen. They probably wandered into their little country from the great desert that lies between Egypt and the Land of the Two Rivers. Let's look at the map on page 67 to see just where Phoenicia was. It was west of the plains of the Tigris and the Euphrates rivers. It was north of Canaan, the land of the Hebrews. It was north and east of Egypt. It was marked off by the Mediterranean Sea on one side and by high mountains on the other side. In some places the mountains came almost to the sea, and there was only a narrow strip about ten miles wide between them.

For many years the Phoenicians got along as well as they could with a little herding and a little farming. But as the people grew in numbers, some other ways of making a living had to be found. Naturally, some of the people turned to the sea. They built small, flat boats from which to fish.

At first they stayed near the shore. As they grew used to sailing, they went farther from home. The Mediterranean Sea is fairly calm; so there was little danger, even for small fishing boats. In time they built larger boats and traded with people of the islands.

Merchants going from Babylonia to Egypt, and from Egypt to Babylonia,

Phoenicians trading on distant shores



passed through Phoenicia in long caravans. The Phoenicians looked at their goods with wonder. They traded with the merchants and found that they could copy some of the goods that they got in trade. They began making things.

As their trade grew, so did their need for larger and better boats. They made boats with two decks of oars instead of with one deck, as boats had been made up to that time. They made ships with sails of strong linen.

There were small harbors all along the three hundred miles of their sea-coast. At two places the Phoenicians built really large and splendid harbors. At these places grew the busy and noisy cities of Tyre and Sidon.

From the cities of Tyre and Sidon the Phoenicians sailed out into the sea, and from the sea into the wide oceans. They made charts by which to sail their ships. They studied the course of the stars and learned to guide their ships by the North Star.

Not all the people were sailors and traders. Many of them made goods to be sold, as you know. They made fine glass and shaped it into vases, bottles, cups, beads, and even mirrors. They made beautiful things of bronze and

silver and gold. They became especially skillful in making jewelry.

They learned to dye cloth in many lovely colors. But they kept the making of the dye a secret, and no one else found out how to make it.

Like the Babylonians and the Egyptians, the Phoenicians learned how to write. For a time they used signs copied from other people with whom they traded. Then they found a better way of making signs. They decided on the use of letters which stood for certain signs. The letters could be made into any word needed for writing.

Our own alphabet came from the Phoenicians. It was changed by both the Greeks and the Romans, but it is still very much like the first alphabet made by the people of Phoenicia.

Sometimes, if trading was very good in a place they had visited, the Phoenicians left some of their own people in that land. These people started trading posts and made their homes in the strange land. They brought their own customs and manners to their new homes. Thus better ways of living were carried to far-away countries. For that reason the Phoenicians have often been called the carriers of civilization.

The History Workshop

While the Egyptians were learning to do and make new things, other peoples a long, long distance from Egypt were also learning new ways of living. These peoples lived in the land of the Fertile Crescent. The Babylonians, Hebrews, and Phoenicians were three of the many tribes that lived in the Fertile Crescent. Let us see if we know these tribes and understand how they made changes in the way people lived.

A ship to draw

If you like to draw, you can have fun drawing a picture of a Phoenician ship. The Phoenicians were the great sailors of their time. Their boats were bigger, better, and handsomer than other ships. The pictures of Phoenician ships on pages 16 and 82 will help you make your drawing. You can find pictures in other books.

Choosing the correct people

The Babylonians, Hebrews, and Phoenicians did not live the way you do today. But some of the things you have today were started by these tribes. Below are some sentences telling you some of the things these people did. After reading each sentence, tell whether it belongs to the Babylonians, the Hebrews, or the Phoenicians.

1. These people were the first business men of long-ago times.
2. These people gave us the Bible.
3. They gave us our belief in one God.
4. Our alphabet came from the one used by these people.
5. These people were the first to make written laws.
6. Our standards of weight and measure are like the ones set by these people.
7. These people were the great sailors of ancient times.
8. These people kept records and accounts as we do today.
9. These people guided their ships by the North Star.

A make-believe school

Imagine that you and many other boys and girls attend a school in long-ago Babylonia. This long-ago school is different in some ways from your school. But you will find that in other ways it is like your own modern school. You will have to think carefully to answer the following questions about your Babylonian school. Remember that you are living many, many years ago.

1. Are there desks in the school? What do you sit on? Is it comfortable?
2. How many things do you learn to do in school? What are they?
3. Suppose that your first subject is arithmetic. Might you be learning the multiplication tables?

4. Pretend that your next subject is reading and writing. You have no alphabet or words to learn. What do you learn instead? What do you write on?

5. There is no clock on the wall to tell the teacher when it is recess time. But he has another way of knowing. What does he use to tell the time?

6. Pretend that it is lunch time. You brought your lunch from home. What did you carry it in? What do you have to eat?

7. Perhaps your father has given you some money to buy something for him on your way home from school. What does the money look like? Could you carry very much of it at once?

8. Is your school open to the children of both rich and poor people?

Something to make

Pretend that your father is a merchant in Babylonia. He wants you to keep a list of the goods he sells in his store. Since there was no paper to write on in those days, you must make a tablet of clay. With a sharp, pointed object print on your tablet a list of some of the things that your father sells in his business. Your printing will not be like the signs the Babylonians used for writing. You can pretend, however, that your make-believe father in Babylonia can read your printed words.

After you have carefully printed your list of products, let the tablet dry. Now your tablet will be like the accounts the Babylonians kept many, many years ago.

Books to read

If you wish to read more about the Babylonians, Phoenicians, and Hebrews, you can get the following books at your library: *How the Present Came from the Past*, by Margaret E. Wells; *Babylonia and Assyria*, by Louise Mohr; *Palestine and Syria*, by Louise Mohr; *Our Beginnings in the Past*, by Daniel Knowlton and Armand Gerson.

A People Who Loved Learning and Beauty





A People Who Loved Learning and Beauty

Beginnings in a Beautiful Land

If you have learned your geography lessons well, you will remember that the land of the world is divided into seven great parts called *continents*. Perhaps you can name all the continents without having to look at the globe to do it. But just now we are interested in only three of the continents—Asia, Africa, and Europe. Parts of these continents are often called the *Old World*. This is because their history was known long, long before our part of the world, which is called the *New World*, was even discovered.

You saw small parts of Asia when you went into the Land of the Two Rivers. You saw a small part of Africa

when you went into Egypt. The peoples of those different countries learned to know one another through trading, you remember. They traded also with other peoples of the Old World. Among these were the Greeks, who lived on a small part of the continent of Europe.

Look at the map of Greece, page 89. Find the Mediterranean Sea, on which all those ancient peoples sailed. Notice that the waters of the Mediterranean wash the shores of all three continents. *Mediterranean* means “between lands.” When you look at the map and find all these lands, you can see what a good name was given to that sea. It is truly a sea between lands.



Let's look at the map again. Notice that there are many mountains in Greece. Some of them go down almost to the sea. Mountain sides cannot be farmed easily. The valleys between the mountains can be farmed, but they are small and narrow. Naturally, where valleys are narrow, farms are small.

You can see that the sea sends long pointed arms into the lands of Greece. These arms, called gulfs or bays, offer many good harbors. A harbor is somewhat like an open door, for it invites people to go in and out. You should not be surprised, then, to learn that many Greeks went out to sea and became sailors and traders.

You should not be surprised either to learn that the Greeks were great lovers of beauty, for their tiny country was beautiful. The slopes of the hill-sides and mountains were covered with grapevines loaded with fruit. Between the vineyards were groves of olive trees whose leaves were like silver, and whose

fruits were like dark jewels. White sheep dotted the hills, and shaggy goats climbed up and down rocky slopes. Rushing streams ran down steep mountain sides and hurried through dark forests to sparkle and shine in the light of pleasant valleys.

The sun shone brightly over the land all day for more than half the year. Its rays were seldom too hot. During the winter months heavy rains fell. After the rains began, the countryside, which had grown dusty in summer, soon became fresh and green again. Greece was truly a beautiful country.

Wandering tribes settle in Greece

Once upon a time, thousands of years ago, very wise and civilized people lived in the land now called Greece. These people had found many ways of living pleasantly and happily. They made beautiful pottery and carved splendid statues. They built temples to their gods. They lived in comfortable



homes. They had even found a way to carry waste water from their homes.

How do we know that these people had learned to live in such a civilized manner? By digging into the earth, wise men have found ruins of old cities of Greece. No one knows why people left these cities. We know only that after many years the buildings became covered with sand and earth and were

forgotten. But what has been found in their ruins shows how the people lived.

No one knows how long those ancient people lived in their land. Their happiness came to an end, however, because the people of one valley often made war on the people of another. War destroyed their temples and their homes. War spoiled the valleys. What was worse, war weakened the people.

Maps Showing Ancient Greece

You will want to study the map of Greece on this page. See how the mountains break the land into many valleys. Some of these reach the sea and become bays or gulfs.

On the opposite page is a map of a much larger area. You will use this later when you read about Alexander's empire. The black line is drawn around the lands he conquered. You can see that his empire took in both lands you have read about, Egypt and the Fertile Crescent. They are within the broken white lines. Can you find Greece?



It was while the people were weak and helpless that wandering tribes of shepherds came into their land. They came from the north where the winds were bitterly cold. They had grown tired of snow and ice and biting winds and wanted a more comfortable place to live. These people were ready to take by force any land that pleased them. They were young and strong and brave, and they had weapons of iron.

The tribes wandered on and on toward the south. When they came to the sunny land that is now Greece, they decided to stay there. They drove out some of the people who had lived in this land for such a long time. They made slaves of some of them and took their land for themselves.

As the years went by, more and more herdsmen came from the north, driving their flocks before them. Each tribe must have been pleased with the soft sea air and the warm sunshine, for each tribe settled a valley of its own. As

soon as one valley was settled, a new tribe moved into the next one. And often, as new wanderers came in, some of the older settlers moved on to new places. In this way all the good lands of Greece were taken.

These people lived simply, for they knew no other way of living. They went on herding sheep and goats as they always had done. As years went by, some of the people turned to farming. Their farming was very different from that of the Egyptians and the Babylonians. No great rivers flooded their land. The mountain streams flowed swiftly, carrying much soil. But there were no wide valleys where the waters could spread out and leave rich soil on the land.

Farmers could not very well store water to give to their plants during the long dry season. So they learned to use most of their land for crops like grapes and olives, which can stand long months of dry weather. The roots of grapevines and olive trees go deep into



*Great jars of olive oil
ready for market*

the ground and get enough water even in dry times. You can understand why the farmers of Greece raised grapes and olives. On their own farms they made wine of the grapes and oil of the olives.

The Greeks become traders and colonists

As more and more people came to this land, some of the herdsmen and farmers turned to the sea for a living. They went out in small, flat-bottomed fishing boats, first into the gulfs and bays, and later into the Mediterranean Sea itself. Soon they saw that other people also were sailing the sea.

When first the fishermen saw white-sailed ships gliding over the blue waters, they opened their eyes in wonder. Could strange people be coming to take their land from them? No. The men on board the large, white-sailed ships

were peaceful sailors and traders looking for new customers. The fishermen didn't know these people, but you do. They were the Phoenicians.

The Greeks were curious about the Phoenician sailors and merchants. They crowded around the ships and stared in wonder at the fine clothes of the merchants. These clothes looked so much better than their own clothing of shaggy goatskins or sheepskins or crudely woven cloth. They examined the goods with which the Phoenician boats were loaded. Strange and wonderful goods! Gladly they traded some of their oil and wine for the new and exciting things.

They studied everything carefully. After a while they tried to copy some of the things. At first their copies looked like the work of small children. But they kept on trying, and after many years they made even more beautiful

things than the Phoenicians had made. But long before that time the Greek traders had put aside their coarse clothing and had dressed themselves in finer clothes, much like those worn by the Phoenicians.

What were some of the things that the Greeks made? They had a little clay, so they made pottery, beautiful pottery. They had a little silver and gold in their mountains. Of these precious metals they made jewelry and handsome cups and fine plates. In time they learned from the Phoenicians how to build better boats. Then the Greeks sailed farther and farther away from their homes, carrying on their trade.

Men who had never before been out of their narrow valleys now sailed far away from their homes. They came to know the sea well and to love it. It was natural that they should, for the sea waters washed three sides of their land. Gulfs and bays reached far inland, so far inland that no place in Greece was more than forty miles from sea water. At one place the country was almost divided into two parts by a great gulf, called the Gulf of Corinth.

When the Greeks stood on their eastern shore, they were facing the Aegean Sea. Its waters were sprinkled with tiny islands, green and sparkling and

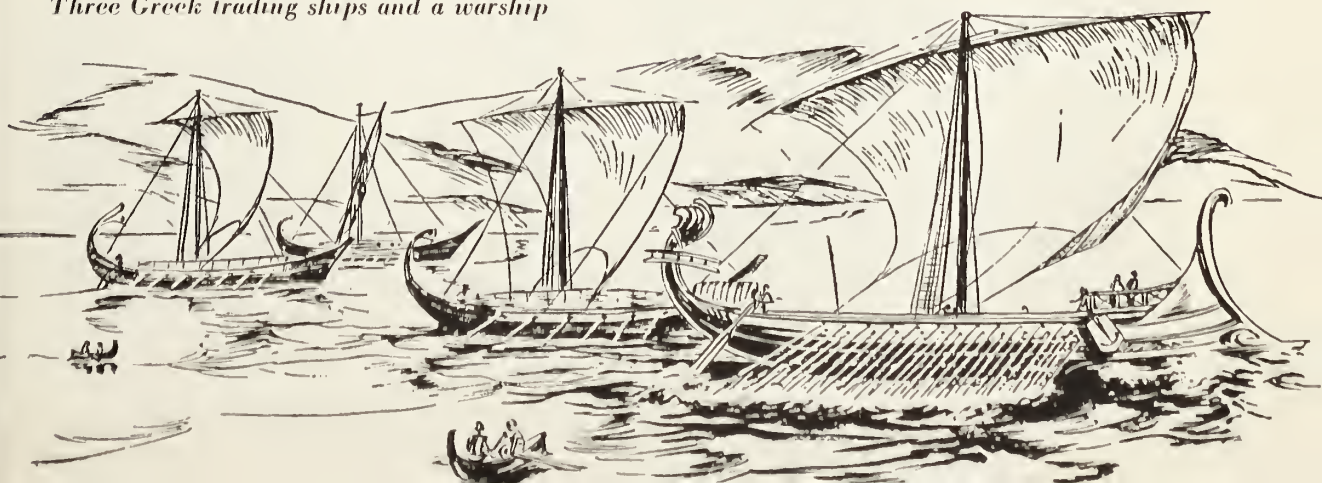
lovely to see. These islands seemed to call to the Greeks to come and explore them. And that is just what the Greek sailors did. After a while they began to think of the islands as stepping-stones which would lead them on and on to the east and to the south.

Greek sailors and traders searched the seas for new lands and new customers. There was plenty of olive oil and wine in Greece, you remember. The Greeks exchanged huge clay jars of wine and of oil for shiploads of wheat, of which they did not have nearly enough. They traded oil and wine for metals and lumber and other materials with which to make beautiful things.

In those ancient times olive oil was very important. It was used in many ways. There was no butter in Greece because there were few cows. So people dipped their bread in oil. They used it in cooking. They rubbed their bodies with it, much as we use soap. They burned it in lamps.

As they traded, the Greeks noticed that the other merchants were making odd little black marks on thin yellow sheets of papyrus. These marks were records of what had just been traded. The Greeks watched curiously. They asked questions. Then they, too, began to keep records of their trading. They

Three Greek trading ships and a warship





The Greeks learned about writing from Phoenician traders

learned the multiplication tables and a few other forms of arithmetic.

The Greeks copied the Phoenician letters, adding some of their own. They always liked to improve on the ideas that they had at first copied. By and by they had an alphabet of twenty-six letters. The first letter was called *alpha*, the second was called *beta*. You can easily see where our word "alphabet" comes from. When the Greeks had learned how to write, they began to order much papyrus from Egypt.

The people of Greece were not satisfied just to carry on trade. They began to settle some of the lands to which their ships had carried them. Almost every Greek ship that went out to trade also carried some people to settle the lovely islands or the new lands along

the coasts. These settlers took Greek ways of living with them to their new homes. The colonists in each group took along a little of the soil and a bit of fire from their home cities. The earth and the fire had been blessed by the gods. That was a pleasant custom. And it made the colonists feel that they were still living in Greece, though they were far, far away from the land which they always thought of as home.

Old and strange beliefs

The Greeks believed in many gods and goddesses, as did nearly all the people of ancient times. The Greeks knew the sea and they loved it. Many made their living from it. So it was natural that one of their most important gods was the god of the sea.

The Greeks loved the bright sunshine that made their country so pleasant to live in. They loved beauty—the beauty of their country, the beauty of the human body, the beauty of the things they had learned to make and to build. They also loved learning. So they worshiped especially the god of the sun, the goddess of beauty, and the goddess of wisdom.

The gods, the Greeks believed, lived on a lofty rocky mountain called Mount Olympus. They were thought to be like human beings, only wiser, stronger, and more beautiful. Wonderful stories of the Greek gods have come down to us through the years.

No one knows when the stories began, because the early Greeks did not know how to write. The stories were passed from father to son, from story teller to listener. Some men of that long-ago time made a business of story telling. They went from village to village and

entertained the people with the heroic deeds of the gods. Often the story tellers added a little here and a little there, so that the stories gradually grew in the telling.

Some men could tell stories very well. They made the words roll off their tongues so that they sounded like music or poetry. These men were called bards. Even today a poet sometimes is spoken of as a bard.

When a wandering bard entered a village, the news of his coming spread quickly. People gathered around him where he sat, at the market place or by the side of a dusty and busy road. They listened eagerly to every word of his marvelous tales, even though they had heard these tales again and again.

As the Greeks listened to the great deeds of their gods and goddesses, they grew to love their beautiful country more and more. Wherever they went, they boasted of the wonders of Greece.

Great City-States in the Land of Greece

When Greece was settled by wandering herdsmen, you remember, each tribe seized a valley for its own and built a village there. The villages that had good harbors grew into cities. And since there were many good harbors, there were many large cities. As years went by, the cities grew so powerful that they ruled over the rest of the valley. They were *city-states*.

In ancient Greece the city was not in the state. It was the state. Each city had its own laws and its own customs. Each city had its own trade. Each city had its own army for protection, and some cities also had navies.

Each city ruled over the valley in which it was located. So you see it really was the state.

The people of all the city-states spoke the same language. They believed in the same gods. They had many of the same customs. But the city-states of Greece were separated by mountains. The people of one city-state did not know the people of the next city-state. It was too hard to cross the mountains to go visiting. So the people feared each other. Often one city-state became jealous of another. Sometimes the city-states even made war on each other.

Of all the city-states of long-ago times in Greece, Sparta and Athens were the largest and the most powerful.

How the people of Sparta lived

The city-state of Sparta was in the southwestern part of Greece. From the beginning the Spartans had been great warriors. And, as time went on, they became greater warriors. There were several reasons for this.

As they settled in their own particular valley, the Spartans made slaves of many of the people who were already there. They forced the slaves to do all the hard work. They gave them no rights of any kind. Yet the Spartans were always afraid that the slaves would join together, rise against their masters, and set themselves free.

The Spartans knew only one way to live in peace with these people whom they did not trust. That was to keep an army so large and so powerful that the slaves would never dare rise against them. Of course, the Spartans were always thinking, too, of enemies who might come from another land and take their valley away from them. Protecting themselves against the slaves and against their enemies was really very important to the Spartans—so important that they spent most of their lives getting ready to fight.

When a boy of Sparta was seven years old, he was taken from his home and his mother and was sent to a military camp. He lived as a soldier until he was sixty years old. Then he was thought to be too old for a soldier's life. But he was still kept busy doing work for the city-state and training the boys in the military camps.

You could never imagine what kind of life a Spartan boy led. He was taught to make his body strong by jumping, running, fighting, and climbing mountains. He was sent on long journeys through gloomy, lonely forests so that he would become fearless. His food at the camp was coarse and not very good, and he never had too much of it. Every once in a while he was made to go without food for a time, so that he would get used to being hungry. And he didn't dare to complain, no matter how hungry he was.

Every Spartan boy was taught to find food for himself. Then if he were lost from the rest of the army and from the food supplies, he could manage to keep himself alive almost anywhere. A Spartan boy might just as well be dead as to show himself cowardly about pain or about any other hardship.

Girls of Sparta were not trained to be soldiers. They learned spinning and weaving and how to care for their homes. But they were trained to think that the most important thing in life was to help the soldiers. They learned to be brave in their own way.

Spartan women sent their husbands and sons to battle without a word of complaint. They told them to come home with their shields or upon them. The women did not ask what had happened to their men in a battle. They asked if the Spartans had won. Perhaps you have heard the expression "Spartan courage." Now you know what that expression means.

The people of Sparta, as you have seen, thought only about training men to be soldiers. They did not care much about anything else. They cared not

at all for beautiful things, and they laughed at the people of other city-states who did. Since they did not care about beautiful things, they were not interested in trading. Why should they bother about bringing lovely things from other countries? They lived very simple lives and got along with simple things. If they had enough food and clothing, and enough weapons to carry on their wars, they were satisfied.

How the people of Athens lived

A greater city-state than Sparta was Athens. This city was built on a hill not far from the sea in southeastern Greece. The Athenians made their city one of the most beautiful in the world.

The Athenians admired strong bodies just as the Spartans did. But they thought that the mind and the thoughts were just as important as the strength of the body. One of their sayings was, "A sound mind in a strong body."

A boy of Athens started to school when he was seven years old, but he went on living at the home of his parents. Schools were sometimes held at the home of the teacher and sometimes

out of doors. No doubt you think it a very fine idea to have school out of doors. But how would you like to begin your lessons at sunrise and go on with them until sunset? That is what the Athenian boys had to do.

Each schoolboy was taken to and from school by a well-educated slave, who was called a *pedagogue*. This man carried the boy's schoolbooks, but he also had other and more important duties. He it was who taught the boy many things that were not found in books and were not taught by the teacher. Among other things, the boy was taught by his pedagogue how to be mannerly and courteous, and how to behave as a gentleman should.

Boys learned to read and to write. At first the Greeks wrote on wax tablets. Later they used papyrus. They learned the great stories and poems they all loved. Greek boys learned to recite clearly, without mumbling or muttering or running their words together. They were expected to learn to sing some of the poems and to play a musical instrument. The flute and the lyre were favorite instruments.

On the way to school



Learning to read



Playing a lyre



When the Athenian boy was eighteen years old, he took what was called the "oath of citizenship." This oath was somewhat like the pledge of the Boy Scouts of today. In the oath the boy promised to become a good citizen, first, by learning the laws of the Athenian city-state and, second, by obeying them. He promised to do all he could to make his city a better place. After he had taken the oath, he was given two years of very strict training in the life of a soldier. The Athenians needed an army, too, for they had enemies to fear, as the Spartans had. But they did not think it was at all necessary for every Athenian man to give up his whole life to the army.

Slaves did much of the hard work in Athens and on the farms and vineyards around. There were other workers, of

course. Men who were wealthy had little to do but enjoy themselves. Such Athenians often met together. They met at the market place or at the barbershop. When they met, they talked. They talked and they talked and they talked. They talked about how to make Athens a better and more beautiful city-state. They talked about their laws and how to make better laws. They talked about poetry and plays.

The Athenians were fond of going to the theater. You may be surprised to hear that the theaters opened early in the morning and stayed open all day. In the theaters the men listened to fine plays and good music. After seeing a play or listening to a musical program, the men discussed what they had seen and heard. They told what they liked and what they didn't like and explained

Athenians at the market place



why. They made many suggestions as to how the play or the music could have been improved.

All the writers of that ancient time felt very much honored when they had been invited to appear in one of the theaters of Athens and read what they had written. If the wise men of Athens praised their work, the writers were sure that they had produced something that really must be good.

Sometimes a little group of Athenians would put on a play of their own. They made the stage settings and the costumes. Everything had to be well done or they were not satisfied. Some of the ancient Greek plays are acted today on stages in our own large cities. People still delight in seeing them.

Are you wondering what the women did while their men were away? They stayed at home and did the work of the home or saw that the slaves did it. They had to attend to the spinning, the weaving, the cooking, and the housekeeping. Usually, neither women nor girls were seen in public places. They did not even go out to do the marketing. The men attended to that. The girls did not go to school, but a few of them were taught at home to read and to write.

You might think that the women and girls would try to make their homes beautiful, since they all had to spend so much of their time at home. But the homes of Athens were not especially beautiful. They were built around



The women worked at home

courtyards where the families spent much of their time. They were gloomy and not very inviting. Even the rich men did not build light, airy houses. They built them of brick and of stone instead of the dried mud that poor people used for their houses. Men often entertained their friends in their homes. At such times the women and children were not expected to be seen.

How laws were made in Athens

Perhaps you think that the men of Athens were rather selfish in having all of the good times themselves. No doubt they were. Yet some good came of their talking together and thinking together. As years went on, such men had more and more to do with making the laws of their city-states. And they made better laws.

In the early days of the city-state of Athens the people were ruled by kings. But the kings of Athens never had the power to make all the laws, as did the

kings of Egypt and Babylonia and other countries. The kings of Athens called a council of nobles to help them make laws. Sometimes the kings called an assembly of men to discuss the laws and to vote on them.

All the men except the slaves were invited to the Assembly. As you may imagine, all sorts of men made up such a group. There were rich men who owned much land and many ships. There were poor men who worked side by side with the slaves. There were merchants and bakers and fishermen. There were artists and writers of plays and poets and musicians. All the men of Athens except slaves were freemen, but they were not all citizens.

Most citizens of Athens were sons of Athenian fathers. The Athenians had slaves who never were citizens. Many free men in Athens could not be citizens because their fathers had not been born in Athens. They were men who had come from another land or from another city in Greece to trade or to work in Athens. No matter how long they lived in Athens, they could not become citizens. They were considered foreigners. They could sit in the assembly. They could say what they liked or didn't like. But they could not vote.

Even though they could not vote, the freemen gave the others many good ideas. The king often liked to find out whether the freemen were for or against a law which had been made or was about to be made. He would order the law read so that all could hear it. After the reading, the men would argue about it. Some would talk for the law, some against it. Talking about the law helped everyone understand what was

good about it and what was not good. After the discussion the Assembly voted.

The Athenians did not always have fair laws or good laws. The important thing about their lawmaking was that all freemen were allowed to discuss the laws, and the citizens were allowed to vote on them. Before that time, you remember, kings had made the laws. They also had collected the taxes for themselves. They had started wars and had done many other things about which all the people should have had something to say but didn't. So you see how important it was that Athens let the people have something to say about how they should be ruled. This was a new thing in history.

Because the people had so much to say about the laws of the city-state, Athens was called a *democracy*. Democracy is a Greek word which means "rule of the people." You can see that our own country is a democracy, because the people here rule themselves.

The Olympic Games

Every four years the Greeks held athletic contests and games in honor of their gods. These contests and games were held at a place that was called Olympia. That was a good name for the place at which they were held, because the gods were supposed to live on Mount Olympus. Of all the festivals held in Greece to honor the gods, the Olympic Games were most important.

The games were in charge of judges who made the rules for the contests. Every boy and every young man who entered must be a Greek. He must have been always faithful to the gods. He must come to Olympia well trained for



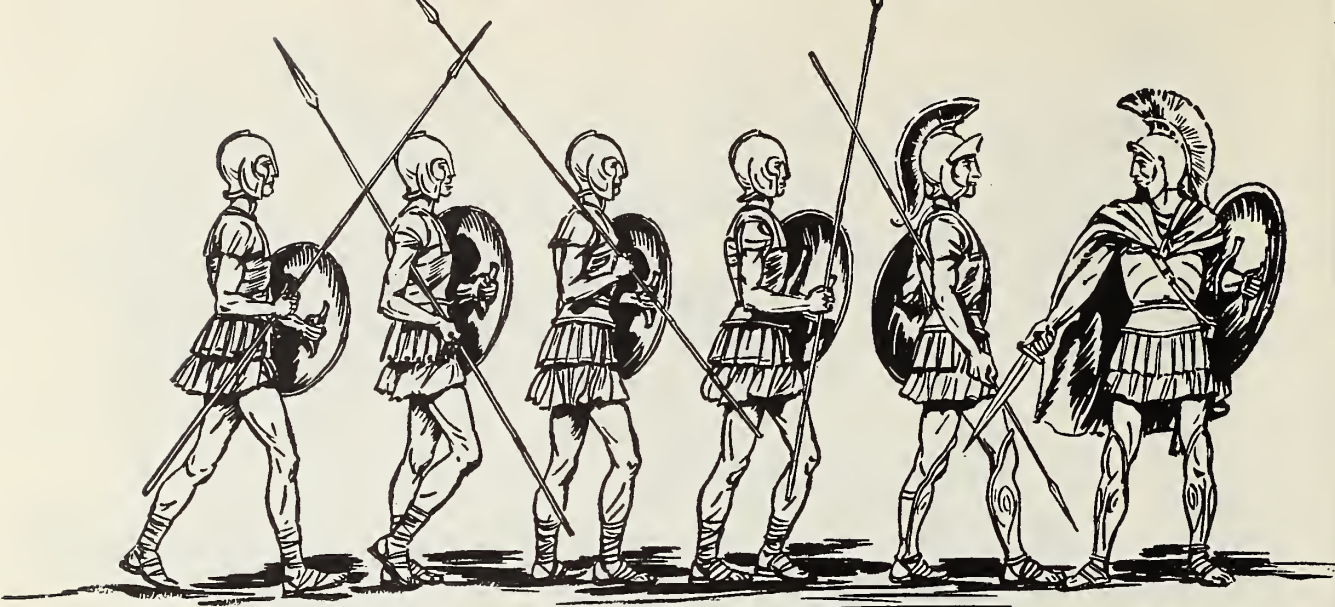
The long jump at the Olympic Games

the contests which he was to enter. And he also must be willing to take thirty days of extra training after he arrived at Olympia.

At first the games consisted only of foot races. As time passed, other events were added. There were contests in wrestling, in throwing the javelin, or spear, and in jumping and boxing. There was also a contest in throwing the discus. The discus was a queer, flat, round plate made of stone or metal. It was not easy to learn to throw such a plate any great distance. But the Greeks practiced and practiced until they became very skillful.

Thousands of people from all parts of Greece came to the Olympic Games. They came from here, there, and everywhere. They walked miles and miles or rode uncomfortably on donkeys. No matter what was going on in Greece, everything was stopped for the big event. Even when there was a war going on, the warriors stopped fighting long enough to enjoy the games.

Goods of different kinds from all parts of Greece and its colonies were brought to the games to be displayed or to be sold. Thus people exchanged ideas for making things and for trading. Great writers brought their new plays



Greek soldiers

and new poems. Great musicians played their best music. There was something going on all the time.

As you might expect, the Spartans paid little attention to the music and the poetry, and to the interesting things on display. But they won most of the prizes at the games. The prizes were only wreaths of olive leaves which the winners wore on their heads. But the winners were as pleased with the wreaths as they would have been with silver or gold. After Greece was conquered, the Olympic Games were no longer held. The modern Olympic games are somewhat like them.

How Greece was conquered

You remember that the city-states were separated from one another by mountains. You remember, too, that the people from different city-states did not know one another very well, and that they were always quarreling and fighting. Perhaps if the people of all the city-states had united while they were strong Greece might never have

been conquered. But they did not unite and Greece was conquered, although the Greeks fought off their enemies for hundreds and hundreds of years.

King Darius of Persia had once tried to conquer the Greeks. He had already defeated the peoples of many of the lands of the ancient world and had made each conquered land a part of Persia. Darius made the people give up their own ways of living and live as the Persians lived. He wanted to make Greece a part of Persia, too.

King Darius had large armies of soldiers who rode on horseback and fought with bows and arrows. He had built fine roads over which armies could march with speed. He had many good ships. Darius thought that he was strong enough to take over the land of the Greeks without even fighting. So he sent word to the rulers of the city-states and asked them to become a part of Persia. But the rulers replied that they would never, never do that. They said their people would not give up Greek ways of living for Persian ways.



Persian soldiers

Then the Persian king sent an army across the Aegean Sea to attack the city-state of Athens. The people of Athens were very much alarmed. They thought that alone they could not keep the Persians from conquering their land. But if the Spartans would help them, together they could defeat the Persians. The rulers of Athens sent a messenger to Sparta to beg help of the Spartans.

The distance from Athens to Sparta was about one hundred fifty miles. The messenger ran the distance in two days. That was such a heroic thing to do that people still talk about it.

Sparta did not send help in time for the battle with the Persians. So there was nothing for the Athenians to do but to meet the Persians alone. The warriors of Athens had heavier armor and longer spears than the Persians. What was more important, they were fighting to defend their families and their homes. They defeated the Persians at a place called Marathon.

After the battle was won, the Athenians called that same brave messenger

to take news of victory to the people at home. How gladly he must have carried that news! Most people do not know the name of the messenger. But the name Marathon is often used. It has been given to the long-distance race.

The Athenians had saved their city-state, but they were very sure that the trouble with the Persians was not over. And it wasn't. In a short time the Persian king sent a great army by land and at the same time a great navy by sea to defeat the Athenians. The Athenians had also built a fine navy to defend their city. All the people except the soldiers were sent out of Athens to safe places in the hills.

The Persian army marched on Athens and set fire to the city. But while that was going on the Athenian navy was defeating the Persian navy. The Persians had not counted on such a defeat. What could they do? There was not much food in the city, which they had destroyed. Their navy had been so badly defeated by the Athenian navy that it could not bring in food. There

was nothing for the Persian soldiers to do but to march back home.

That battle was a very important one, even though it took place so long ago. No one can tell what would have happened if the Persians had overcome the Greeks. The Persian armies had already destroyed many villages, many vineyards, many temples and other fine buildings. If they had conquered the Greeks, they might have destroyed all the ancient Greek civilization.

As it was, the Greeks were fairly safe from their enemies for many years. And during that time the people made wonderful progress in writing, in building, and in making better laws. They built beautiful temples. They made fine statues of their gods and heroes and wrote poems and plays about them. They made beautiful pottery and fashioned jewelry of gold and precious stones.

Everything that the Greeks made was beautiful. When a Greek artist made a temple, or a statue, or a vase, or even a jar for storing olive oil or wine, he made it beautiful.

Of all those wonderful buildings of ancient Greece the most beautiful were the temples. Because the finest marble was found in their mountains, the Greeks used marble for their temples as we use brick or stone. Tall, graceful columns were a part of these buildings. These columns were so beautiful that they have been copied through all the ages. You may see such columns today on houses and public buildings, perhaps in your own town.

Unfortunately, the great city-states of Greece continued to fight with each other for power. The Greeks were divided among themselves because of their many battles. While the country

On the way to a temple



was divided, the army of Alexander the Great marched in and conquered it. Alexander was the son of King Philip of Macedonia, who had already conquered much of the world and had formed a great empire. He had conquered some of the Greek city-states before Alexander came to the throne. Alexander wanted to conquer the rest of the city-states and the rest of the world; that is, the world that was known at that time. He did conquer all of the known world. When he had done that, people said he sat down and cried because there were no more worlds to conquer.

Alexander was more than just a soldier and a conqueror. He was a man who loved learning and wisdom. Some of the wisest men of Greece had been his teachers. Even today, the writings of these great teachers are read by many people in all parts of the world.

Alexander loved the life of the Greeks. He liked their laws and admired their art, especially their beautiful statues, and their music, their plays, and their language. The rest of the world should be like Greece, he thought; so he did all he could to spread Greek ways over all his empire.

He had the Greek language taught to the people he had conquered, so that they could read Greek books. They learned to enjoy Greek art. They were taught the wise sayings of the greatest of the Greek teachers.

In many, many other ways Alexander helped to spread Greek civilization. He conquered the parts of his vast empire with ideas as well as with arms. That is one reason why even today much of the knowledge of the ancient world comes from the Greeks who lived hundreds and hundreds of years ago.

with gifts to honor a goddess



The History Workshop

How much fun it is to find out how the Greeks of long, long ago lived in their beautiful land. Even though they lived many years ago, you have learned that they did some of the same things that you do today. Always remember this as you learn more about the Greeks of long ago. It will help you to know these people better.

An imagination game

Can you let your imagination fly back to the time of long-ago Greece? Pretend, first, that you are a Spartan boy and answer the questions below as he would answer them. Then pretend that you are a boy of Athens. Answer the same questions as an Athenian boy would answer them. Then answer the questions as you would answer them today. Which Greek boy do you resemble the most? The pictures in this chapter may help you answer some of the questions.

1. Do you live at home or at a military camp?
2. Do you go to school?
3. Do you know how to fight, jump, or run races?
4. Do you have to be a soldier all your life?
5. Can you play some musical instrument?
6. Do you see plays and listen to music?
7. Do you live in a democracy?
8. Are you a citizen?

Something to do

How would your class like to hold some Olympian games just as the Greeks of long ago did? You can have wreaths as prizes, just as the Greeks did. Of course, there will be such sports events as foot races, broad jumping, high jumping, and discus throwing. There also will be many other

things for you to judge. You can present a wreath to the student who writes the best poem, the best play, or the best song; and to the one who paints the best picture. Then, too, just like the Greeks, you can even judge some of the articles you have made during the year.

Missing words

There are some missing words in the sentences that follow. Fill the blanks with the correct word, or words, from the list below. Then you will have some complete sentences about the Greeks and Greece of long ago.

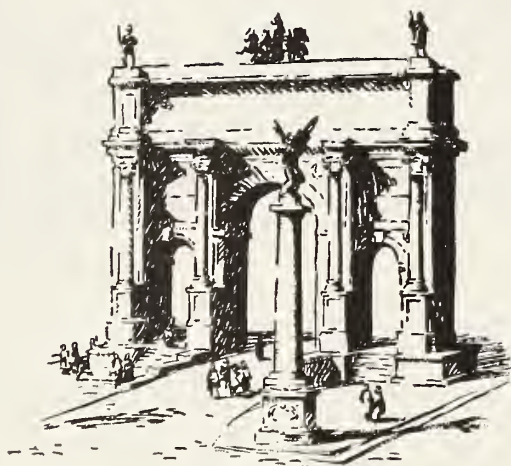
| | | |
|-----------|--------|--------------------|
| Athens | wine | olive oil |
| Spartans | lumber | gods and goddesses |
| Athenians | wheat | bards |

1. The Greeks traded xxxxx and xxxxx grown on their land for shiploads of xxxxx and xxxxx from other lands.
2. The Greeks believed in many different xxxxx, to whom they built temples.
3. The Greek men who told stories in such a way that they sounded like poetry were called xxxxx.
4. The xxxxx were great warriors.
5. The xxxxx believed in a "sound mind in a strong body."
6. The city-state of xxxxx was called a democracy.

Books to read

Here are just a few of the many books that will tell you more about the exciting days of old Greece. *The Story of Long Ago*, by G. V. D. Southworth and J. V. D. Southworth; *In the Beginning*, by Eva Erleigh; *Our Beginnings in the Past*, by D. C. Knowlton and A. J. Gerson; *Stories of the Gods and Heroes*, by Sally Benson; and *American Beginnings in Europe*, by W. F. Gordy.

Roman Warriors, Builders, and Tradesmen





Roman Warriors, Builders, and Tradesmen

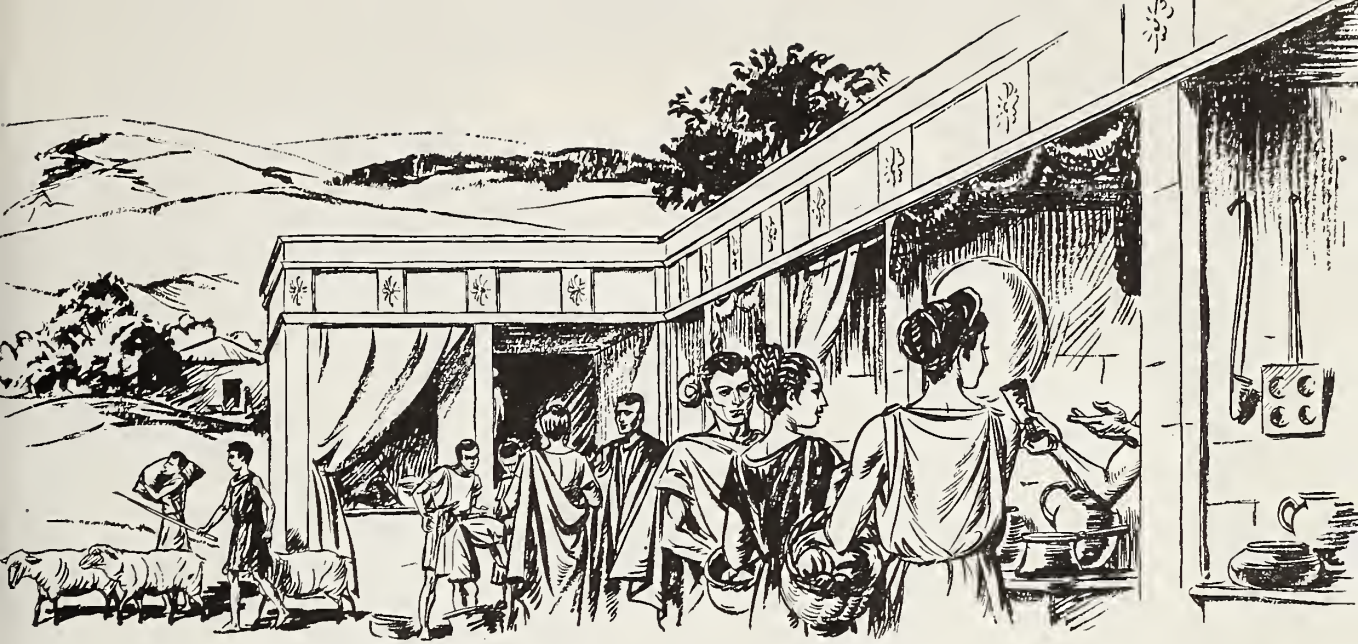
Alexander's Plans for His World

All the countries you have read about in this book, each of which was great in its day, were conquered, one by one, by Alexander's armies. Each conquered country became a part of one large *empire* over which Alexander ruled. In his empire were Egypt, the Land of the Two Rivers, Greece, and many other countries, too.

You remember that the Egyptians and the Babylonians and the Phoenicians and the Hebrews and the Greeks had become wise and skillful. They knew how to build beautiful temples, how to make statues of marble, how to make

fine pottery, how to weave and dye cloth and rugs, how to make lovely jewelry, and how to do many, many other useful things. They sailed the seas and traded. You remember, too, that these peoples had learned to write and to read. They had found ways of keeping accounts of their business.

All these different peoples learned from one another. Alexander helped them to learn. Not only was he a great soldier and a great ruler, but he was also a great teacher. He loved learning. He loved beautiful things and enjoyed comfortable living. It was only natural that



he should do much to spread learning, love of beauty, and better ways of living all through his empire.

You might suppose that a man as wise as Alexander would have planned well for the world he had conquered. You might think that he would have planned for peace, so that the people could go on growing wiser and more skillful. You might think that he would have chosen the wisest and noblest man in all his empire to become ruler after his death. He had no son of his own, you see, to inherit his throne.

Yet, in spite of all Alexander's wisdom, he did a very foolish thing. He told his generals that after his death the strongest one among them should be the ruler. Thus he actually invited the generals to fight among themselves for his throne. And that is just what they did after Alexander had died. They made wars on one another. Wars and more wars, until they had divided the great empire among themselves. Of course, each general fought to get the largest share of the empire for himself.

You will not be surprised then to learn that after all these wars Alexander's empire fell to pieces. That did not happen all at once or very soon after his death. But it did happen.

The beginnings of a city

Long before the empire had fallen apart, another people, the Romans, had become strong enough to think of conquering and ruling the world. The Romans took their name from the city called in their language Roma and in ours Rome. At the time of Alexander's death Rome was several hundred years old but was not yet very important.

Let's look at the map on page 108 and find the peninsula, shaped like a boot, which extends from southern Europe into the Mediterranean Sea. You know that peninsula as Italy. Find on page 109 the Tiber River and, on it, the city of Rome. As you read on, you will learn how the city grew and how the Romans finally conquered the world.

If you could go back thousands of years, you would find the people of



Italy living as all early people lived. Their homes were in caves or beneath sheltering rocks. They fished. They hunted animals for food and for their skins. They dressed themselves in the skins of these animals. In time they learned to tame and herd animals and to plant crops. They learned to make simple little huts of the limbs of trees and plaster them with mud.

Tribes from the north came into the valley of the Tiber River. These tribes were called Latins. They were looking for warmer, pleasanter places to live. They were looking, too, for good pastures for their cattle, their sheep, their hogs. They settled on the banks of the Tiber and built the town of Rome. As time went on, the people who lived in the town were called Romans.

Maps Showing the Roman Homeland and Empire

Use the map on this page to find Rome, which was the heart of the Roman Empire. Ships of that time could reach Rome by way of the Tiber River. You will need to know where Sicily and Carthage were. That will help you understand why both Rome and Carthage wanted Sicily.

The map on the opposite page shows you what a large area the Roman Empire finally covered. All the lands inside the black line were ruled by the Romans. Which empire was larger, the one conquered by Alexander, page 88, or the one ruled by the Romans? Which of these empires reached all the way around the Mediterranean Sea? The broken white line encloses all the lands you have studied so far in this book.



The City of Rome in the Early Days

Rome grew slowly at first, then very rapidly. The hill was a good place for a town. From its peak the people could see far over the countryside. Thus they could discover any enemies who were coming to do them harm. The hill was easily defended. To make its defense even better, the Romans built a wall around it. The very young and the very old stayed within the safety of the wall. Men and women and boys and girls went out to tend their flocks or to grow crops in the pleasant valleys.

As time went on, the Roman tribes began to trade with other tribes of the peninsula. The tradesmen made a road through Rome. Salt was carried on this road from the coast to other parts of the peninsula of Italy.

Perhaps you had never thought that salt was once very important in trade. It is so common now that you use it every day and do not think much about

it. Had you ever thought that there was a time when people didn't use salt? That was in the very early days when they ate their food raw. When they began to cook their food, they made the discovery that salt makes everything taste better. Then everyone wanted salt and a great trade grew. Any road which led to salt was traveled by many traders. You can see how the salt road helped Rome grow.

The Tiber River was also used as a highway of trade. Small boats sailed up and down the river, bringing new things to the people and taking away wine and olive oil in exchange. Thus the Tiber helped Rome grow.

You remember that Greece sent colonists to many lands that bordered on the Mediterranean Sea. Some Greek colonists had settled in Italy. They had brought with them their own ways of living. They were more civilized than

the Romans, and so they gave the Romans many new ideas for better living.

The Romans learned much from the Greeks. So did the other tribes of the peninsula. Their ways of living were changed somewhat by what they learned. They wanted some of the things that made life easier and pleasanter. When people want things, trade grows. Of course, you must always remember that changes in living came very slowly in those ancient days.

How the early Romans lived

How did people live in those early days while Rome was growing? Most of the Romans were farmers. Their farms were small, perhaps only three or four acres in size. Farmers tended every foot of the land carefully and took pride in their crops. They raised grapes, olives, grain, and many of the same vegetables that are grown in our gardens today—onions, cabbages, beans, beets, turnips, and carrots. They taught their sons to

be good farmers also and to care for the soil. The Roman farmers were brave and strong and independent. They were proud of their land and their work and their country.

The home of the early Roman farmer was only a small one-room hut. Sometimes the hut was made of timbers, sometimes of dried clay or bricks. It was roofed with straw and was slightly pointed at the top. There were no windows, of course. Openings in the roof let out the smoke, and a wide doorway let in a little air and light. There was little furniture—perhaps only a few rude stools which stood near the hearth where the cooking was done. But, no matter how rude the hut, no matter how simple the furnishings, there was always an altar to the gods.

Men, women, and children dressed much alike. Everyone wore a short-sleeved garment, called a tunic, which covered the body to the knees and was held in at the waist with a belt, or girdle.

On a Roman farm



Women and girls spun and wove all the cloth for these tunics. No one wore stockings, but nearly everyone protected his feet with sandals that had sturdy soles.

On special days, such as market or feast days, the men wore plain white togas over their tunics. The toga was simply a piece of woolen cloth that was draped about the shoulders and hung over the body. Women and girls, and boys under sixteen, wore white togas with purple fringe.

On market days the farmers and herdsmen from near the city went to Rome, where they traded the things they had for the things they wanted. The farmers loaded their carts with grapes and olives and vegetables. The herdsmen drove their choicest animals before them. In those early days there was no money. People didn't even know about the use of money. Sometimes, however, when they traded with far-away tribes, they used lumps of copper.

Roman gods and goddesses

The Romans worshiped many gods and goddesses, as did other people of early times. The gods were supposed to protect their homes, bring rain and warmth for growing things, and make their lives safe and happy.

Gods and goddesses related to Roman home life were Vesta, the Penates, the Lares, and Janus. Vesta was the goddess of the hearth, or the fireside. The Penates protected the stores of food. The gods who watched over fields and crops were the Lares. Even now, some people speak of their "Lares and Penates." This expression means the most precious things in a home. Another god of the home



The god Janus

was named Janus. He had two faces turned in opposite directions. With one face he welcomed guests into the home as they arrived. With the other face he bade departing guests farewell. The month of January is named after Janus. This is because January welcomes and bids farewell as Janus did. January welcomes the new year and bids farewell to the old year.

Mars, the god of war, was respected more by the Romans than by the Greeks. The Romans needed the help of Mars because they fought a great many wars.

Jupiter, the greatest of the gods of the Romans, sent warmth and rain for the crops. Crops are always very important in people's lives. So it is easy to see why Jupiter was the most important of all the gods. Without his help, the people would have nothing to eat.

All the gods of the early Romans were plain and simple, just as the Roman people were plain and simple. When Rome became rich and powerful, the people were no longer satisfied with simple gods. Then they made up wonderful tales about their heavenly people, just as the Greeks had done. In fact, they borrowed parts of the Greek stories and wove them into stories of their own gods and goddesses.

Much honor was given to the gods. When the family sat down to eat, the father always threw a little food into the

fire and poured a little wine on the floor. This was an offering to the gods and a way of asking a blessing on the home. After the father had performed this ceremony, the family would begin their meal.

Every father was careful to teach his son the correct way to honor the gods. The son, in turn, would teach his son. Worship of the gods was very important to the Romans.

The Roman family

The Roman father was the head and at the same time the ruler of the family. His wife and his children, even his married sons, obeyed him and followed his teaching. No matter how important or

how wealthy a man became, he always turned to his father for advice.

In teaching their children what was right and what was wrong, Roman fathers were always thinking of making them good citizens. They felt that being a citizen was something to be proud of. Obeying the rules of living, or the laws, was a very important part of being a good citizen, just as it is now. Even in their very early days the Romans were proud of their laws. Those who made them tried to be fair and just. They did not always succeed. But in later years they did so well at making good laws that even today some of our laws and those of other countries are based on the laws of the Romans.

How Rome Grew in Power and Became a Great Empire

Life went on in Rome and in the country around it in much the same way for hundreds of years. Yet all the time the city of Rome was growing in power. The Romans conquered all the other tribes living on hills near by, and their people became Romans, too.

First, a city-state

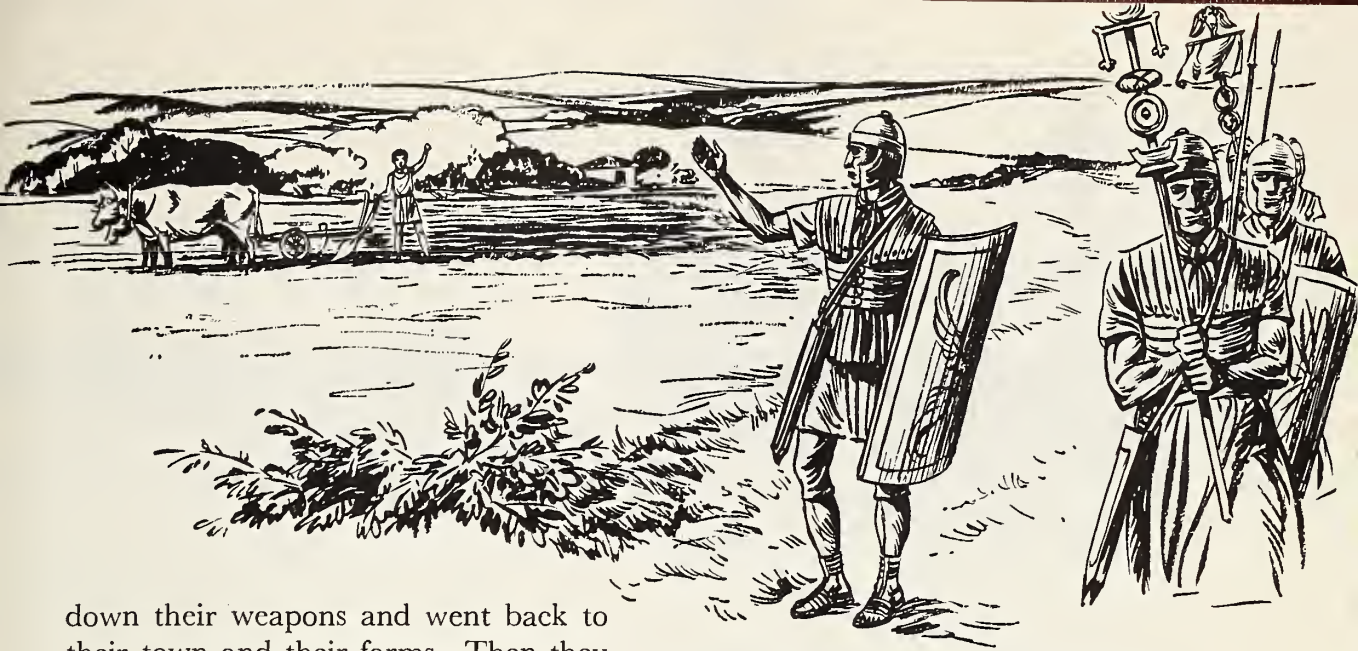
Rome was no longer a small town on a hill. It had spread over seven hills along the Tiber. Even today people talk about the "seven hills of Rome." The city finally became a city-state like Athens and Sparta in Greece.

Gradually the Romans came to be the leaders of all the other tribes in that part of the peninsula of Italy. In time they conquered the Greek colonies in that part of the world. As they conquered these Greek colonies, the Romans took on more and more of the Greek

ways of living. They learned the Greek alphabet and adopted part of the language. They learned also to use Greek weights and measures and began to use copper coins for money.

Yet, much as they had done, strong as they had become, the Romans were still living simply compared with the peoples of the east and the south. Rome was still a city of sun-dried brick when Alexander and the people of his empire were living in great splendor.

The Romans were always brave fighters. From the time when Rome was only a village, its citizens had fought to defend their homes and the country around. When enemies came to attack Rome, farmers left their plows or the harvesting of their grain and went to fight for their homes and their town. Thus farmers became soldiers. When their enemies had been defeated, the farmers laid



down their weapons and went back to their town and their farms. Then they were no longer soldiers.

As they conquered other tribes and other lands, the soldiers began to think of the riches that war brought. At first they thought of such riches for their city. But after a while they began to think of wealth for themselves. Many soldiers no longer thought of going home when a war was over. They stayed in the army. The young men of conquered tribes also were taken into the army. They became Roman soldiers. Thus the army grew and grew.

The soldiers did not spend all their time in fighting. They also built roads leading in all directions out of Rome. Armies can advance rapidly over good roads. Often Roman armies needed to advance rapidly. Many times they were called to other parts of Italy to help tribes defend themselves against enemies from afar. The Roman armies marched away to give help. They drove off the foreign enemies. And then, very often, they conquered the tribes they had helped to defend.

Years and years went by. The Roman army grew more and more powerful.

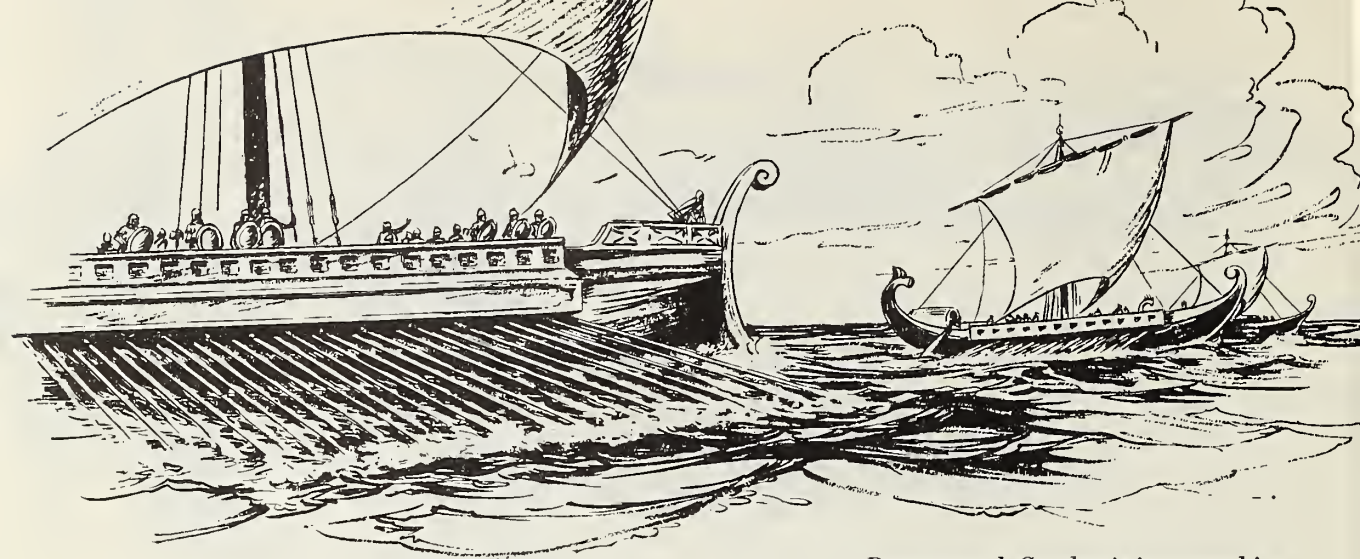
Farmers became soldiers in time of danger

By the time the great empire of Alexander was falling apart, the Romans were beginning to think of conquering more of the world.

Roman conquest

Perhaps you have noticed that just at the toe of the boot-shaped peninsula of Italy there is a large island. That island is Sicily. Directly across from Sicily, on the north coast of Africa, there was once a splendid city named Carthage. The boot-shaped peninsula is still there, of course. So is the island of Sicily. So is Africa. But the splendid city of Carthage is gone.

Carthage was an old city when Rome began. It had been built by the Phoenicians, who had traveled far from their own land, you remember. It had magnificent temples with pillars of silver and gold. It had splendid palaces owned by rich merchants. Outside the city there were fine homes, great vineyards, large groves of olive trees. The Carthaginians had many trading boats and carried on



Roman and Carthaginian warships

a large trade with the countries that bordered on the Mediterranean. They also had a navy.

Rome was beginning to trade with some of the countries along the sea. Carthage grew jealous of the growing trade of Rome. Rome was jealous of the wealth and trade of the people of Carthage. Both cities wanted the island of Sicily. So you will not be surprised to learn that Carthage and Rome went to war with each other. They fought three wars which lasted more than a hundred years. The Romans lost much in those years of fighting. Many of their cities were destroyed. Their fine farms were laid waste. Many of their sons were killed in battle.

Carthage was in ruins. The Romans took everything that was worth taking. They destroyed homes and temples and public buildings. They killed hundreds of Carthaginians and took hundreds of them as slaves.

Still the leaders of the Romans were not satisfied, even though Carthage was nothing more than a heap of rubbish. They had plows driven through the soil,

and had salt plowed into the soil so that nothing would grow. They wanted to destroy Carthage completely.

The Romans were wild with joy when news came that their ancient enemy had been conquered. Rome was now the ruler of northern Africa, as well as of Italy. And the island of Sicily, which had been partly the cause of the many years of warfare with Carthage, was now a Roman island.

Rome went on conquering other countries. By the year 100 B.C. (that is, one hundred years before Christ was born), Rome had conquered almost all the countries along the Mediterranean Sea. Egypt, Greece, and other ancient countries had come under the Roman rule. Do you see that Alexander's empire was becoming a Roman empire?

All this time the city-state of Rome had been ruled by a group of men called senators. The senators did not want Rome ever to have a king. As the army grew stronger and its generals came to have more power, the senators watched in fear. They were always afraid that one of the generals would try to become

king. As time went on, there were many generals to be feared. One of the most powerful was Julius Caesar. He really did almost become king of the Roman world. Let's see how.

Julius Caesar, almost a king

While Rome was growing up to be a great city-state, there lived in the land which is now known as France some tribes called Gauls. The Gauls were not civilized like the Romans, and they were great fighters. They were a danger to Italy.

Julius Caesar and his army marched into France and conquered the Gauls. They marched into the countries that are now called Switzerland, Belgium, and Holland. They conquered the fierce tribes of those countries. Then they crossed the narrow channel of water between Europe and the group of islands which we now know as the British Isles. Caesar and his army invaded these islands.

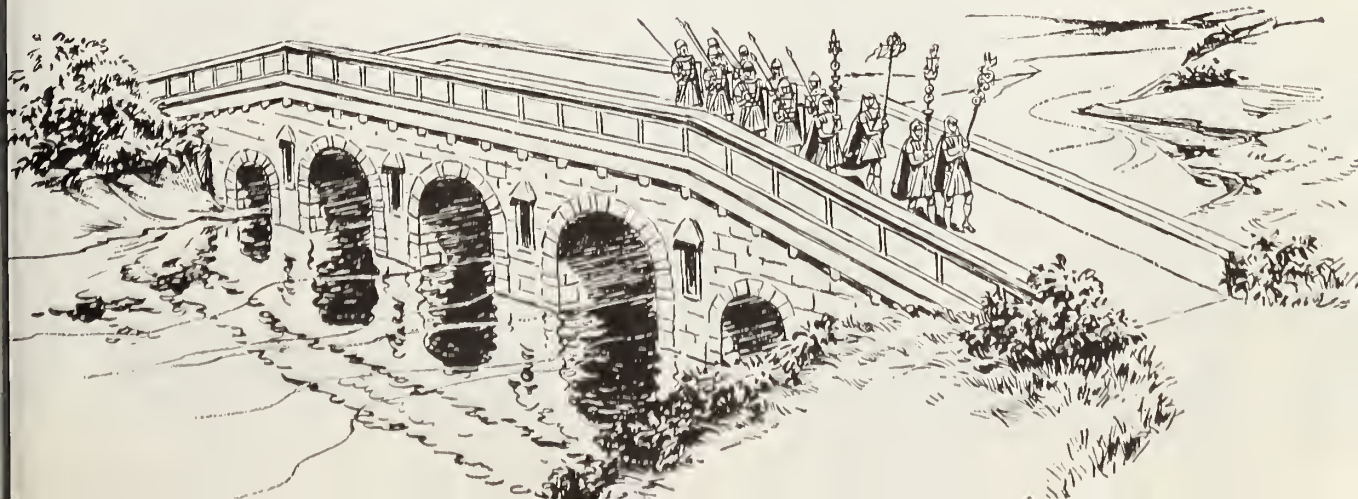
For eight years Julius Caesar and his army fought in those distant lands. They did not spend all their time in fighting. They built fine roads and bridges and aqueducts in the conquered lands. They built temples to the gods. They took Roman civilization into the countries they had conquered.

Even before Caesar had overcome the tribes of western Europe, he was a hero to many people in Rome. He entertained the poor with games and circuses. He gave them food and wine. Of course he did these things not only to be kind and generous but also to make himself admired and popular.

As he conquered the Gauls and other tribes, he put some of the strongest tribesmen into his own armies. Thus his armies grew. He made himself ruler over western Europe. Thus his power grew. The Roman senators decided that Caesar was getting much too powerful and popular. They ordered him to give up the command of his armies and return to Rome.

Caesar didn't like that order. He thought about it for a while and then decided not to obey it. Instead he marched into Rome and made a big parade of his armies and his prisoners of war. The people cheered until their throats were sore. Caesar was much pleased with the welcome he received.

Just as the senators had feared, many of the Romans wanted to make Caesar king. He was, in time, given the powers of a king. But he ruled over Rome for only a short time. He was killed by some of the senators who had been afraid that he would become a king.



How People Lived in the Roman Empire

For a time after Caesar's death the Romans fought among themselves. Some were on the side of Caesar's enemies. Some were on the side of Octavius, Caesar's grandnephew, whom Caesar had appointed as the next ruler. Octavius and his followers soon put down their enemies. Octavius was made ruler of Rome, with the power of an emperor.

Some of the Roman senators had not wanted a king. Neither had many of the people. Now they had an emperor who was more than a king. He ruled over all of the many countries that Rome had added to the empire. He had more power than most kings had ever had.

The new emperor soon gave up the name Octavius and took the name Augustus Caesar. The word *augustus* means "noble" or "majestic." So you see the name Augustus Caesar really meant "Noble Caesar" or "His Majesty Caesar." While he was emperor, Augustus named the eighth month of the year

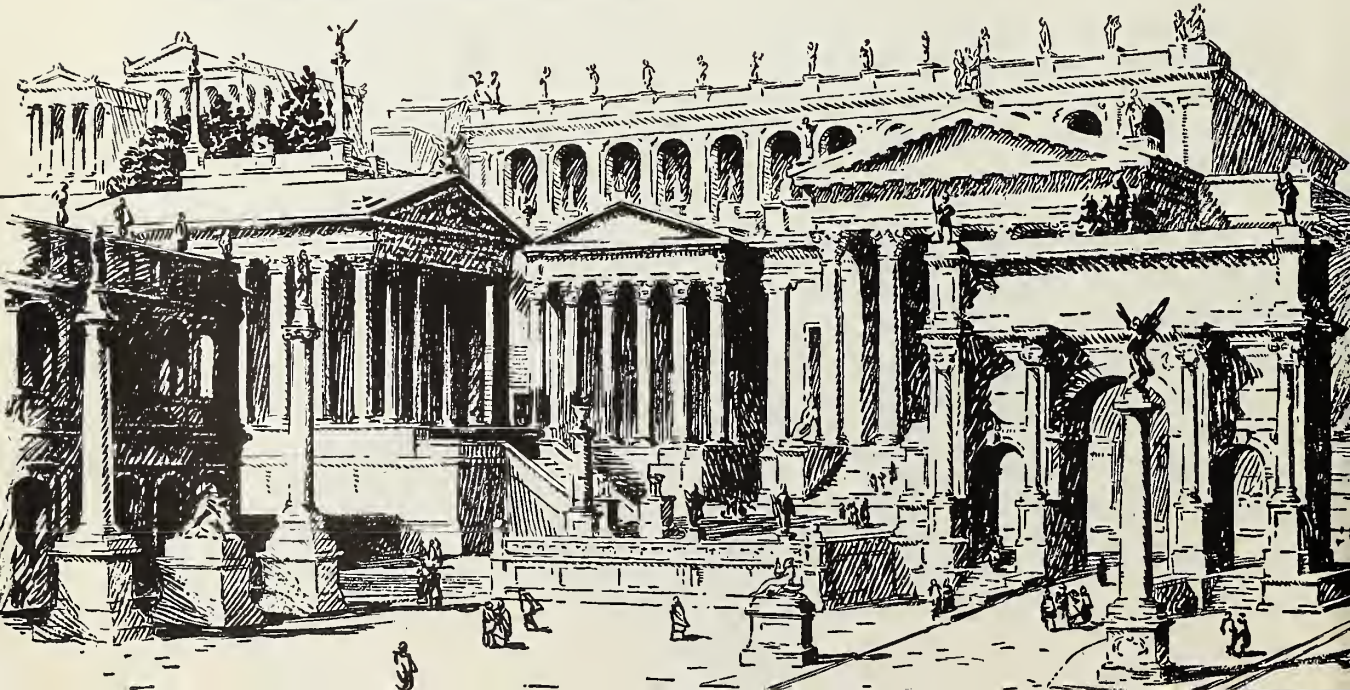
after himself. The seventh month had already been named after Julius Caesar. There you have two reasons for remembering the names of these old Romans.

A city of marble

Augustus was wise. He brought peace to Rome, instead of war, and he set to work to make it a more beautiful city. In his later years he boasted that he had found Rome a city of bricks and made it a city of marble.

You remember that the Egyptians, the Babylonians, the Greeks, and some other ancient peoples had learned to erect beautiful buildings, strong buildings. The Romans borrowed ideas from these peoples, but they also had good ideas of their own. They invented a building material which we now call concrete. They used concrete to make walls of buildings and to hold bricks and stone together. Roman buildings were made so strong that some of them are

Some of the lovely buildings of the Forum



still standing. It was thought that they would last forever and ever, and so Rome was called the "Eternal City."

Many of the most beautiful of the Roman buildings stood around the Forum. In the early days the Forum was the market place where people met to trade. Later it became the place to which people went to hear the news, to see the great parades, to hear great speeches. The Circus Maximus was a very large building where games and other entertainments were held. There were also the great bathhouses, which were open to the public. These houses had swimming pools, large reception rooms, libraries, and rooms where all sorts of games could be played.

Do you wonder where the water in those bathhouses came from? It was brought into the city from distant lakes through aqueducts. An aqueduct carries water, and the word comes from the Latin word which means "water carrier." Roman aqueducts were made of stone and concrete. They were built so

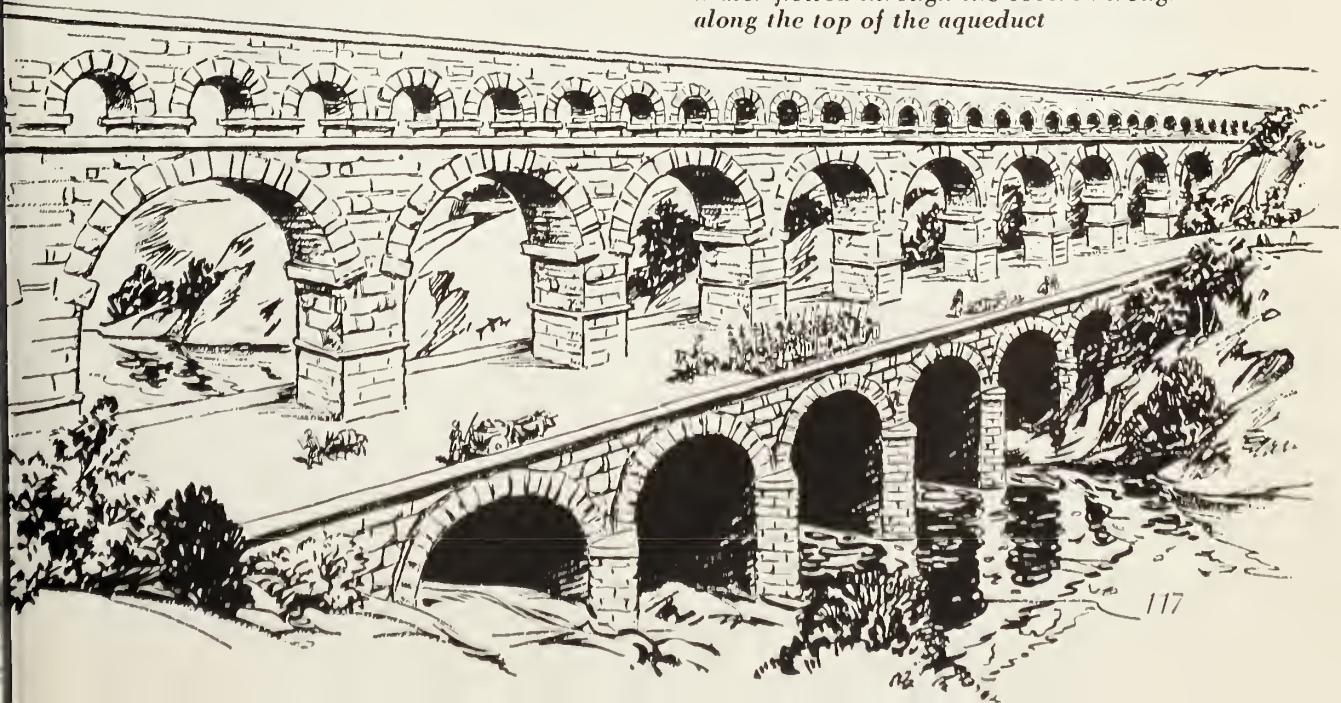
well that some of them are still to be seen. Water from the aqueducts was stored in reservoirs and was piped into homes and public buildings.

The Romans were among the very first people to build aqueducts and underground sewers. In earlier days dirty water and all sorts of waste had simply been dumped into the streets. Naturally such a custom made the cities filthy and unhealthful and was the cause of much sickness. After a time many cities and even many small towns had aqueducts and sewers.

Roman roads and travel

For years the Romans had been building good roads through Italy. As the Roman Empire took in more and more lands, more and more roads were built. You remember that the Roman rulers wanted to be ready to move armies quickly into any part of the empire. Thus if a newly conquered land wanted to throw off the rule of Rome, armies could quickly march out and subdue it.

Water flowed through the covered trough along the top of the aqueduct





Building a Roman road

The best Roman roads were fourteen or fifteen feet wide and three feet thick. They were built of gravel, concrete, and stone. When a strong foundation had been built, large stone blocks were laid on top and were fitted together closely. Thus the surface of the road was smooth, and rain and melting snow could not leak through between the blocks and spoil the foundation.

On each side of the road was a path about seven feet wide. This was for people who traveled on foot. Here and there were fountains of fresh water and benches where travelers might rest.

In Italy, France, England, and Belgium, and in other countries as well, Roman roads, or traces of them, can still be seen. Some of these ancient roads are actually still in use.

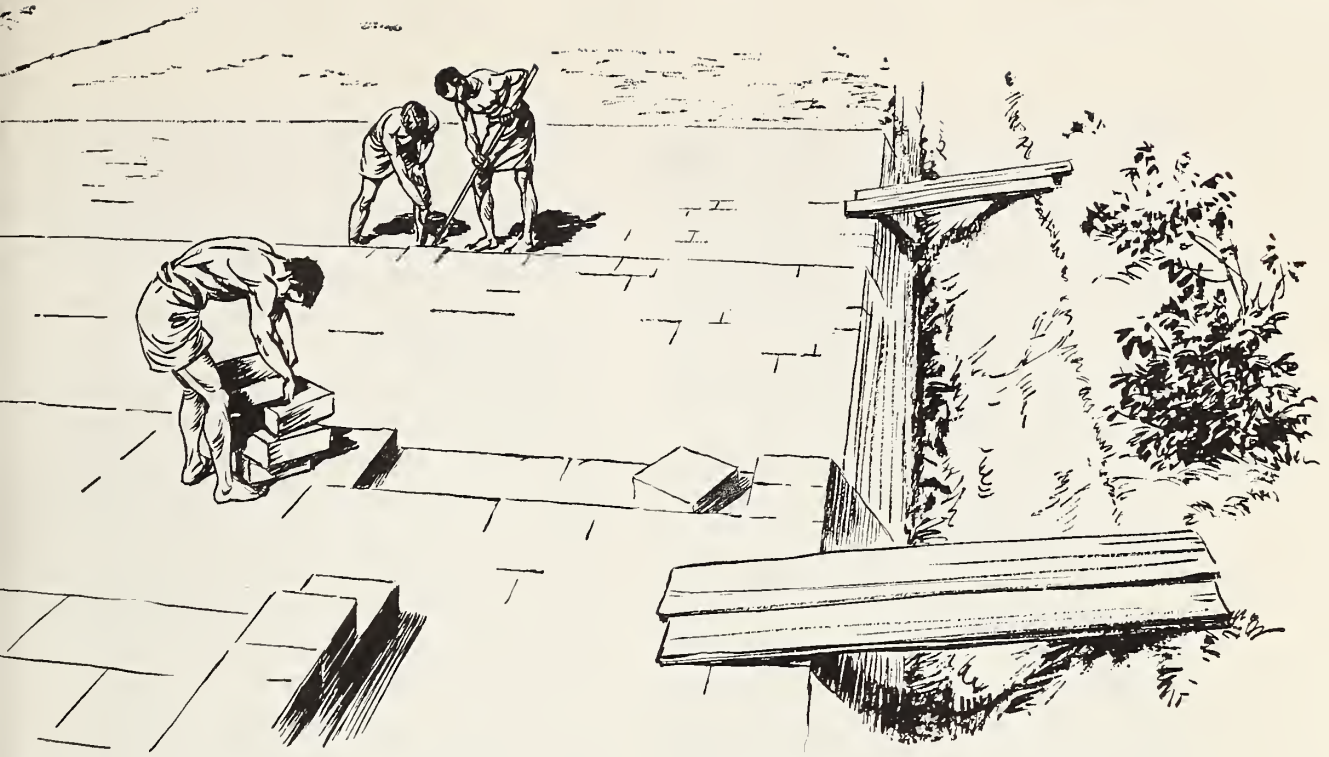
You have heard the saying, "All roads lead to Rome." You can see how this saying started, for many of the roads built by the Romans led into Rome.

Let's slip away from the schoolroom. Let's run back several thousand years and sit on one of those benches by the side of a Roman road and watch the ancient world go by.

Here comes a peddler with a little donkey carrying bags of cheese and dried fruits. Behind him is a group of slaves wearily pushing carts of vegetables to the city market. Another group is pushing carts of chickens and ducks squawking and quacking.

A messenger on horseback dashes past. He must be carrying an important message. He will stop at the next inn, change his tired horse for a fresh one, and be on his way again. Several soldiers march proudly along. They serve as highway policemen and protect travelers from robbers.

Now comes a chariot drawn by horses driven by slaves. In this chariot we see a Roman gentleman who is traveling from his home in the country to his



home in the city. From the purple stripe on his white toga, we know that he is a Roman senator. From the richness of the chariot, we know that he is a man of great wealth. At some distance behind him come rumbling wagons driven by slaves and loaded with all sorts of farm produce. Behind them come larger wagons loaded with great jars of olive oil and wine.

And now, wonder of wonders! Here come several strong wagons on which are great cages. Between the bars of the cages the angry eyes of wild lions, wolves, and bears look out at us. These animals are being taken to a Roman circus, and they do not appear to be at all happy about it.

A general comes riding along on his fine horse. Behind him come four-wheeled carts drawn by horses and loaded with all sorts of riches that the army has taken. Behind the carts, captured slaves, horses, cattle, and sheep

are driven along by soldiers. In the distance we see more soldiers coming, their shields and armor glistening in the afternoon sun. They advance rapidly. They are rather frightening. Let's hurry back to the schoolroom.

Life among the wealthy people

While Rome was becoming the ruler of the world, and after it had won a great empire, many changes took place in the lives of the people. Some of them were getting very rich. They owned lands and great herds of animals and ships at sea and many slaves.

The life of a wealthy Roman gentleman was mostly one of pleasure and ease. He usually had two homes, one in the city and one in the country. Even Roman noblemen still loved their farms, just as their great-great-great-grandfathers before them had. But there was a great difference in the way they thought of the land. Their grandfathers and

fathers had actually done the work. The noblemen of the empire had other people do the work, while they spent much of their time in the city.

The nobleman's city home was like a palace. Its walls were of brick or of stone or of cement blocks. Some of its stairways were made of marble. The Romans built their homes around open courtyards, like those of the Greeks.

The courtyards were decorated with shrubs and small trees and with beautiful marble statues. Often the sparkling waters of a fountain added to the beauty of the court. The furnishings of the living rooms were few and rather simple, though they were rich and elegant in design. Couches, low-backed chairs, stools, and chests stood about the walls and the fountain. Oil-burning lamps of silver or pottery or bronze cast flickering lights over everything.

The first story of the house had no windows on the street. But the second story usually had a few windows with

panes of glass. Many homes had one or more bathrooms with hot and cold water. Every home had an enormous kitchen with a wide, open hearth where the food was prepared.

A dinner party

Shall we go to a dinner party at the home of a rich nobleman? Of course, we haven't been invited to the party. But we can attend politely enough if we go only in our imaginations.

We step through a door opening on the street and go down a passage which leads to a reception hall. From there we enter a lovely room.

The guests have already gathered on three sides of a long table. One side is left open so that the slaves can serve the food easily. The men lie on couches within easy reach of the table. The women sit less comfortably on low-backed chairs. Near by are small charcoal burners which send out heat, for the evening is a little chilly.

A Roman dinner party



The men wear tunics of rich, deep color. The women wear lovely robes of soft color. Their hair is massed high on their heads and bound with bands of silver or gold. Several women have dyed their hair to match their robes. Others wear false curls. Most of them wear fine jewelry around their necks, around their wrists, on their fingers. Some even wear rings on their thumbs.

As we look at this colorful scene, slaves come bearing great trays of food from the kitchen. First a course is served which is supposed to sharpen the appetites of the guests. Then fish, salads, meats, vegetables, and sweets are served in courses.

Much of the food is passed to the mouth with the fingers, though spoons are used at times. Forks have not yet been invented and table knives are not in use. The women use their spoons very daintily, but the men are not so dainty. Between the courses the slaves pass bowls of water so that the guests may wash their sticky fingers.

The dinner goes on and on. The guests laugh and talk and enjoy themselves. From a corner of the courtyard comes soft music. We cannot help but compare the women at this dinner party with the Greek women who always had to keep out of sight when their husbands were entertaining friends.

After a while some of the guests call for their sandals. Then we notice for the first time that the guests, both men and women, have been dining in their bare feet. What a strange custom! Calling for the sandals is a signal that the guests are about to leave. Slaves appear presently with the sandals of their masters and those of the women.

We hurry through the passage and stand on the street in the shadows. We watch the slaves bring the chairs for the gentlemen and the ladies and prepare to carry them to their homes. These comfortable chairs are set between poles. They are carried by tall, strong slaves, who support the ends of the poles at the front and at the back.

What did the Roman gentlemen and noblemen do besides enjoying themselves at dinner parties? They visited their farms or the harbors where their ships came in. They saw to it that their slaves did the work. Sometimes they visited the poor and gave them help. They went to the Forum, where they listened to accounts of what the Roman armies were doing, or heard news of what was going on in the empire. They discussed the laws. Senators helped make the laws. Many men of wealth gave much time to reading the books that had come to them from the Greeks. Many of the wisest men gave much time to writing. Some of the books written by the ancient Romans are read to this day.

Roman slaves

As you probably have guessed by this time, the Romans had many slaves—men, women, and children. Some of them had been brought by Roman armies from conquered lands. Some had been captured in far-away places by Roman traders. In the market places of Rome and other cities the captives were sold to those who could afford to buy.

Many slaves came from fine homes, wealthy homes. Many were well educated, even better sometimes than the men who bought them. Some slaves were taken from farms or vineyards,

others from ships at sea, still others from shops where things were made or where things were sold. Such slaves were usually skillful in one way or another.

The educated slaves served in the homes of the wealthy. They cared for the young children and taught the older ones. Much of the learning of other countries was brought to Rome by these educated slaves. They served as scribes, taking care of accounts and even copying books. Other slaves, not so well educated, did the work of the home. They stood at the door to welcome guests, and they served the guests. They carried their masters in chairs to the Forum or to the Senate. Those who were especially strong acted as bodyguards for their masters. The lives of such slaves were not hard, especially if their masters were kind.

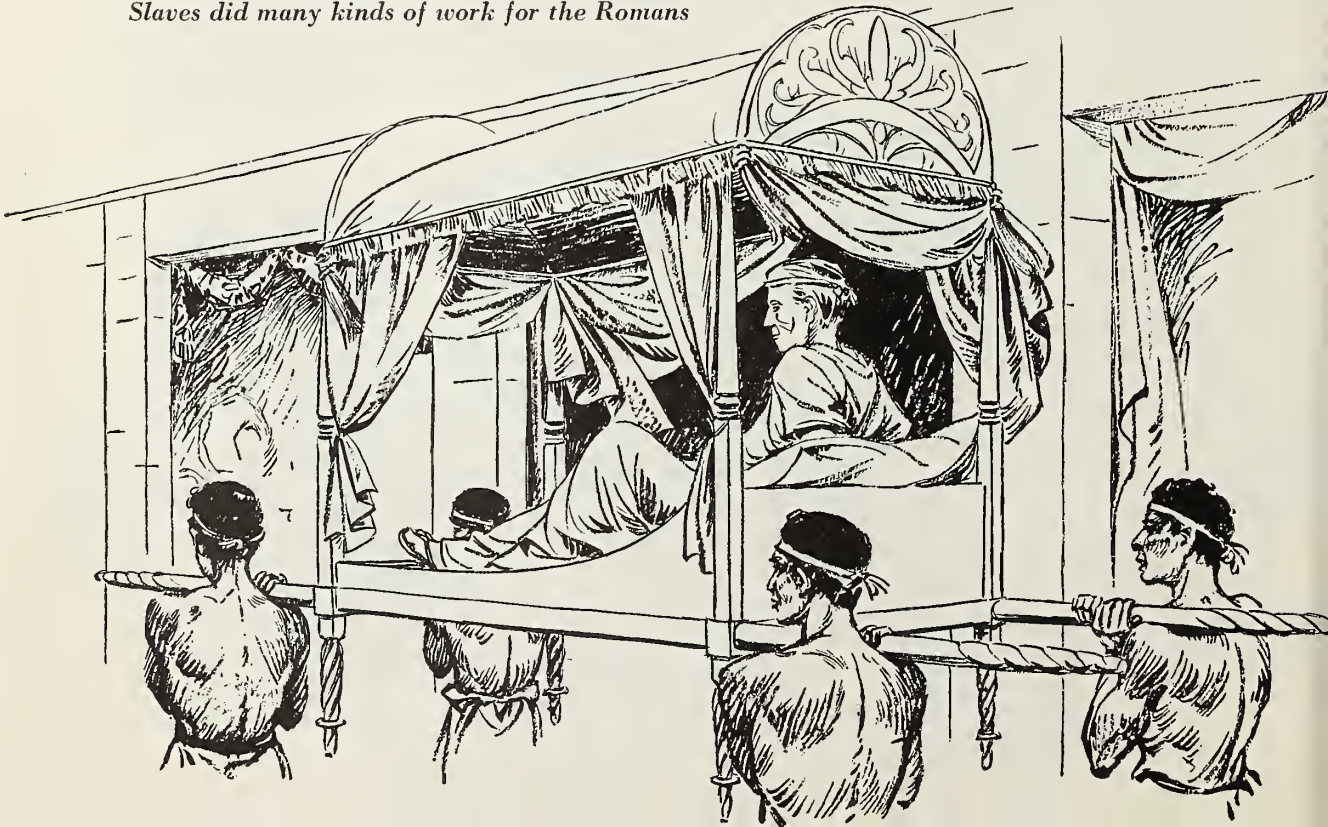
Many, many slaves did harder work. Those who had been farmers usually did

the work of the farm. Slaves who had been shopkeepers and traders often went into business for their masters. Such slaves were sometimes allowed to keep some of the money they made. Thus they had a chance to buy their freedom. If they gained their freedom, they were known as *freedmen*.

The slaves who had done only hard work before they were captured had little chance to do any other kind of work under their new masters. The lives of such slaves were usually miserable. They worked long hours, their food was poor, their clothing was often nothing but rags. Sometimes, if they did not work hard enough to please their masters, they were beaten.

As you can understand, the custom of having so many slaves was not good for the Romans. They became very lazy and selfish. They paid no attention to the sufferings of other people.

Slaves did many kinds of work for the Romans

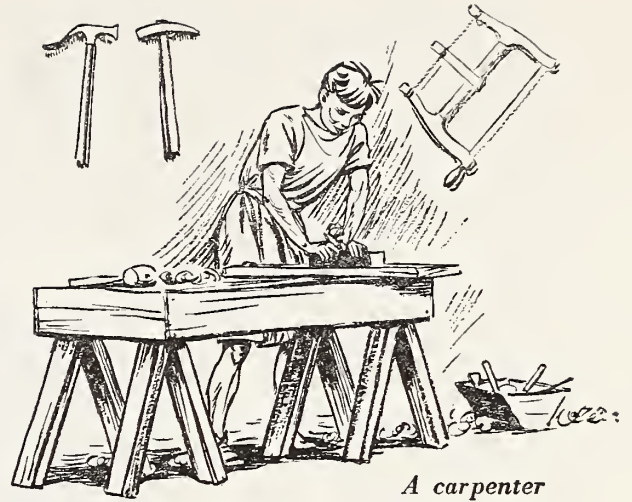


Roman workers

There were other classes of people in the Roman Empire besides the very rich and their slaves. There were also the workers and the people in trade. Dyers, weavers, shoemakers, painters, carpenters, doctors, grocers and shopkeepers, teachers, clerks, and many others made up this group. Some of the workers grew wealthy and built homes as fine as those of the noblemen. Many of them lived comfortably, though they never grew rich. Others managed to make barely enough to live on, and still others were even worse off.

The very poor people had little hope of ever being anything else. Some of them had once been farmers. They had lost their land and had moved into the city to find work. But there they found that the slaves did most of the work. Even the workers who had always lived in the city could find little to do because of the many slaves.

The number of poor people increased. After a while they gave up even trying to find work. They just lived as best they could on what was given to them. When a great victory had been won, the generals sent them food and wine. On feast days the rulers sent food and wine. Now and then an emperor or a senator would scatter gold among the poor. All these things did good for just a little while. The people needed more than gifts of that kind. They needed ways of making their own living fairly and honestly. They grew very unhappy, for they no longer had any pride in themselves or in the empire. And that was not a good thing either for the people themselves or for the Roman Empire.



A carpenter



A butcher



A blacksmith

Thousands of the poor people lived in crowded buildings owned by wealthy men. Such buildings were usually made of timbers and were four or five stories high. Often an entire family lived in one room. There was no running water to carry off waste. There was no way of getting rid of garbage.

Sickness and disease lived with the poor in their homes. There was always danger of fire. The buildings stood close together, so that fire spread quickly. There was no good way of fighting it. Several times in Roman history thousands of people lost their lives in fires. Augustus Caesar had boasted that he made Rome a city of marble. But he was speaking only of the fine buildings around the Forum.

The Roman army

In the early days every Roman farmer taught his son to protect his home and his city against enemies. After the Romans began to conquer other countries, soldiers fought for riches for the empire and for themselves. After a time the Roman soldiers grew more and more greedy. They grew cruel and heartless, too. They were willing to go to war with any general who was strong enough and clever enough to win. That seemed to be good for the empire. But it turned out not to be.

How did they fight—these soldiers of ancient Rome? Long spears, called lances, were used in battles. They were thrown at the enemy from a distance. Short swords were used for hand-to-hand fighting. Soldiers of other countries used such weapons, too.

To protect their bodies, the Roman soldiers wore breastplates of strong

leather, covered with strips of metal to make them even stronger. They wore helmets of metal. On their left arms they carried shields with which to protect themselves from the thrusts of enemy spears. The shields reached from the shoulders to the knees and were curved to fit the body.

Armies had many different kinds of weapons to be used in attacking enemy cities. One of these weapons, called a battering-ram, was used to knock down walls. Another weapon, called a catapult, was used to throw stones over walls. A great tower was also used in taking a city. The tower could be moved close to the wall of the city. Then soldiers mounted the tower and scrambled over the wall.

Often Roman soldiers made camp near the borders of the lands they had conquered. Such camps were walled so that enemies could not enter. Trade began at the camps, and towns grew up near by. Thus the Roman soldiers did much to spread the Roman language and the Roman ways of living.

Children of Rome

Boys and girls of the Roman Empire had good times just as boys and girls do now. They played games like "Hide and Seek" and "Blind Man's Buff." They rolled hoops. They played with balls. The girls had dolls.

In the very early days there were no schools in Rome. Fathers taught their sons the work of the farm. Mothers taught their daughters the work of the home. As the empire grew in strength, schools were set up. Some were public, some private, and all were for boys. Girls were still taught at home.



Schoolboys left home at sunrise. Boys from wealthy homes had educated slaves, called pedagogues, to carry their books and teach them good manners. You remember Greek boys had such slaves. The books the slaves carried were scrolls, about which you have read.

Each schoolboy had a wax tablet and a wooden pen called a stylus. As there were no desks, the boy had to hold the tablet on his knees as he wrote. One end of the stylus was flat and was used to rub out mistakes.

The schoolroom was a very noisy place because the boys studied aloud. The teacher read and the boys repeated the lessons after him, doing their best to memorize them. No boy was allowed to stutter or stammer when he repeated his lessons.

Music was not taught to every boy as it had been in the earlier days in Greece. Romans did not believe that music was for the pleasure of everyone. Only those boys who showed talent for it were given special training in music. Such boys were expected to become public musicians and to furnish the music for public entertainments.

When a boy was sixteen, he was ready to become a Roman citizen. He was given a toga to wear as a sign of his citizenship, and his name was listed at the Forum. A festival was held in his honor. Then the boy selected one of the Roman leaders as a model for himself. He tried to pattern his life after that of the leader. He followed his leader to the Forum and to other public places. He listened to the speeches made by his leader and tried to make speeches like them. Of course, he used his leader as a model in other ways.

Wealthy boys traveled through the Roman Empire. They studied with great teachers at Athens and at other famous cities. After such training, they were supposed to be ready to become great leaders themselves.

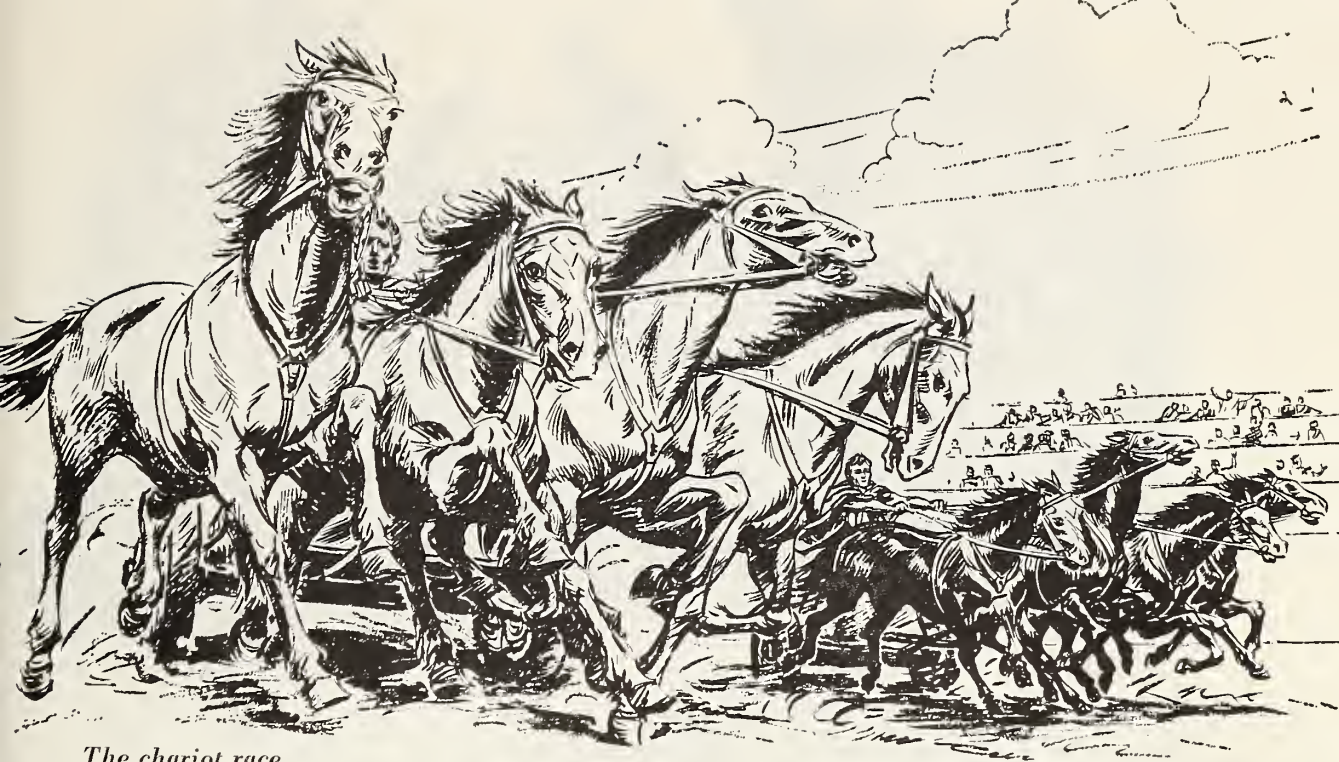
Roman amusements

Every year the city of Rome received from the cities and towns of the empire great sums of money in taxes. Much of this money was used to put up huge buildings where the public could be entertained. These buildings were something like our football stadiums. The largest of these was the Circus Maximus which you have read about. There were many others in Rome.

The Romans liked many different games and contests. But the favorite entertainment was the fight of the gladiators. In the early days the gladiators were captured slaves or men who had been sent to prison for crimes. In later days the gladiators were the strong and powerful men who had been captured in battle by the Romans.

Sometimes two gladiators were made to fight each other. Sometimes one group of gladiators fought another group. And sometimes the gladiators fought singly or in groups with wild animals. As such fights became more and more popular, schools were set up where gladiators were trained.

Men, women, and even children went to see the fights. When it was time for a fight to begin, a procession of gladiators marched around so that people could see them. And if animals were to fight, they were paraded in their cages. Sometimes there were several make-believe fights just to make the people



The chariot race

laugh. Then a trumpet sounded again and the real fight was on.

Usually the gladiators fought each other until one or the other had been killed. Sometimes, however, the people would choose to save the life of a favorite gladiator. If he had shown himself brave and a particularly good fighter and yet was losing the fight, the people would turn their thumbs up. That was a sign that his life was to be saved. The winning gladiator would pause and turn to look at the people. Thumbs up, he stopped fighting.

Another favorite amusement of the Romans was the chariot races. These races were held at the Circus Maximus in Rome and in large circus buildings in other cities. Chariot races were dangerous, as were most Roman sports.

The chariots were drawn by horses driven by slaves. They raced around two tracks separated by a low wall.

Each driver knotted the reins of the horses together and then put them around his waist. He carried a knife so that he could free himself by cutting the reins in case of an accident. His chariot might be turned over in the wild speed of the race, or it might be smashed by another chariot.

Each driver wore a special color. The people watching the race wore the color of their favorite driver. Gold, green, blue, purple, white, and red banners fluttered over the audience. Rich presents and money were given to the winners at the end of each race.

The Romans had other amusements besides the fights of the gladiators and chariot races. They had games something like the Greek games at Olympia. They went to theaters to see plays, in which the actors were often Greek slaves or freedmen. They spent a great deal of time at the public baths.



A meeting of early Christians

How Christianity Came to the Roman Empire

While Augustus Caesar was emperor of Rome, Jesus was born in a stable near Bethlehem. You have heard the story. His mother, Mary, and Joseph, her husband, had gone to the town of Bethlehem to pay their taxes. Bethlehem was a part of the Roman Empire, you know. There was no room in any of the inns for these poor people. They found rest in a stable near the town, and there Jesus was born.

When Jesus was about thirty years old, He began to teach and preach in many parts of the Roman Empire. Many people followed Him as He went about teaching, for they believed His teachings. They were called Christians. Jesus, as you probably know, was also known as Christ.

Many Romans, especially the rich and powerful ones, did not like the Christians or their teachings. They said that the Christians were not good citizens because they did not believe in

Jupiter and the other gods. When Rome lost a battle, or when there were great fires in the city, the Romans declared that the gods were angry. And they blamed the anger of the gods on the Christians. Many Romans tortured the Christians, and the emperors did not try very hard to stop them.

About three hundred years after the death of Christ, a wise Roman emperor brought to an end much of the punishment of Christians. He was not a Christian himself, but he thought it was wrong to punish people for what they believed. He sent out an order that all people might worship what gods they pleased. They might go on having festivals to honor Jupiter, or they might go on being Christians. In either case they would not be harmed.

A few years later a new Roman emperor came to the throne. His name was Constantine. He became a Christian, and he did much to spread the

teachings of Christ through the Roman Empire. For more than a hundred years after Constantine there was no more punishment of Christians.

Under Constantine the Christian religion grew. Magnificent churches were built. Christian customs were spread through the empire. The lives of many people were changed.

The teachings of Christ were so important to the world that people began to note the passing of years from the time of His birth. The date 100 B.C. means one hundred years before the birth of Christ. The date 100 A.D. means one hundred years after the birth of Christ. *Anno Domini* is Latin for "in the year of Our Lord." Can you tell how long Augustus Caesar, the first Roman

emperor, ruled if you are told that he ruled from 29 B.C. to 14 A.D.?

The empire is divided

You might suppose that an empire as great and as powerful as the Roman Empire could never be conquered. But it was. Even in the days of Constantine, which was about 300 A.D., the empire had already been divided into two parts. One was known as the Roman Empire of the East and the other as the Roman Empire of the West. The Roman Empire of the East lasted for nearly a thousand years. The Roman Empire of the West did not last nearly so long. It was conquered by fierce tribes that came from north of the empire—as you shall see as you read on.

The History Workshop

The Romans became so strong that they tried to conquer and rule the whole world, just as did other early peoples you have read about. Of course, the Romans did not know how large the world really is. The lands about which they knew were only a small part of it, but these lands seemed like a big world to them. Let us look back on the days of the Roman Empire. Let us see in what ways it was like your own world and in what ways it was different.

Looking at your map

Look at your map of the Roman Empire on page 108. You can see on the map that all the lands in the empire are quite close to the sea. Would you expect the Romans to be good sailors? Why? Would you expect them to have a large navy? Why?

Name the places in the Roman Empire that you have read about in this book. What does Italy look like as it sticks out

into the Mediterranean Sea? Are there other peninsulas in the Roman Empire? Name them. Are there many islands?

How does your map help you to understand what you read?

An imagination game

Let us pretend that you can go back to the time of the Roman Empire. Can you imagine yourself as a wealthy Roman schoolboy in the city-state of Rome? Let your imagination go back to a time long, long ago as you play this answer game. Compare the answers you give to the questions as a Roman schoolboy with those you would give as a schoolboy today.

1. Are there any girls in your old Roman schoolroom?
2. Do you carry your own books, or scrolls, to school, or do you have someone carry them for you?

3. What kind of tablet do you have for your lessons? What do you use to write with? How do you erase mistakes?

4. Do you study silently or aloud?

5. What do you think you will be when you grow up?

6. How do you amuse yourself after school?

Things to compare

The things and ideas in the list below were very important to the Romans. Some of them were given to the world by the Romans. Others were given to the Romans by earlier peoples and then passed along by the Romans. All of them are still important to the people in the world today. Are they important in your community? How many of them are useful to you? How many of them are useful to your father and mother? Can you add other things to this list—things that were important to the Romans or that they handed down to us?

1. alphabet
2. language
3. concrete roads
4. aqueducts
5. stone and marble buildings
6. underground sewers
7. Christianity
8. temples
9. a weight and measure system
10. books

Several games and sports that the Romans liked are mentioned in the pages you have just read. Can you name some of the games played by the children of Rome? Name some of the sports enjoyed by the Romans. Do you know of any similar sports that people enjoy today?

A list to make

Many, many people lived in Rome during the days of the Roman Empire. Not

all of them made a living in the same way. Can you make a list of the different kinds of workers who lived in Rome in those days? Your list might start like this:

1. weavers
2. farmers

Now see how many others you can add to the list. If you wish, you may look through the pages about Rome for some ideas. Does your list of Roman workers include any of the kinds of workers there are in the world today? Do you think that there are more ways of making a living in the world today than there were in the days of the Roman Empire?

Choosing the correct word

The sentences below are about the Romans. Choose the correct word or words from the parentheses to make the statement correct.

1. The (Greeks, Hebrews, Latins) founded the town of Rome long, long ago.
2. (Tradesmen, shepherds, farmers) made the first salt road through Rome.
3. In the early days of Rome, most of the people were (sailors, farmers, soldiers).
4. The city-state of Rome was ruled by (Greeks, farmers, senators).
5. Later, the Roman Empire was ruled by (a president, an emperor, a senator).
6. (Roads, gladiators, aqueducts) were used to carry water to the city of Rome.

Books to read

Here are some books to tell you more about the gods and goddesses, the heroes, and the ways of living of the Romans. *Thirty More Famous Stories Retold*, by James Baldwin. *Westward Toward America*, by M. G. Clark and W. F. Gordy. *Boys of the Ages*, by L. W. L. Seales. *Mighty Men from Achilles to Julius Caesar*, by Eleanor Farjeon. *Our Beginnings in the Past*, by D. C. Knowlton and A. J. Gerson.

Little Kings in Big Castles





Little Kings in Big Castles

The Roman Empire Is Conquered by the Barbarians

The Romans believed that their great empire would last forever. Of course you know it did not. You know that Rome does not rule the world today. The old Roman Empire was broken up nearly fifteen hundred years ago.

Why did the Roman Empire disappear? No one can quite explain that. People give many reasons. They say that the empire became too large. It was too hard to rule and too hard to defend. They say that the rulers became selfish and did not try to rule well. They say that the rich people became greedy and took the land, and the poor

people became almost slaves. They say that the workers became lazy and no longer wanted to work. All these things are true. Still, they do not entirely explain the end of the Roman Empire of the West.

The empire lasted about five hundred years after the time of Caesar. Then it was broken up into many little kingdoms. If you were to take a map of western Europe and tear or cut it into small pieces, you would have an idea of how the empire was broken up. You may think of each piece as a little kingdom. The Roman ways of living dis-



appeared, as well as the empire itself. There were many years of war. No one was safe. Cities were destroyed. Living became much simpler and cruder.

Coming of the barbarians

Here is the story of how the Roman Empire was broken up. Strangely, it begins at the time when the empire was largest and strongest. This was about two hundred years after the time of Julius Caesar. Then the people all over the empire called themselves Romans. They said proudly that Rome ruled the world. No other country had ever been so great.

When the Romans said that Rome ruled the world, they were only boasting. Rome did not rule all the lands of the whole round earth. On the map on page 108 you saw how much the Romans ruled. The empire included much of southern and western Europe. It included some of southwestern Asia and a narrow strip of North Africa.

North of the empire in Europe lived many tribes of people who were much

less civilized than the Romans. The Romans called these people barbarians. The Greeks had made up this word long before. They used it for people who did not speak Greek. To the Greeks, speech they could not understand sounded like "bar-bar-bar-bar." It did not sound like a language at all. All the people they could not understand they called barbarians. The Romans borrowed the word "barbarian" from the Greeks.

North of the empire in Europe lived many barbarian tribes. Early Roman writers described them as fierce and warlike people. They were herdsmen and hunters. Their clothes were made of the skins of animals. Their homes were rude log huts. Each tribe was ruled by a chief. The bravest warrior in the tribe was chosen to be chief.

Later the barbarians learned to spin and weave. Then they wore clothing made of cloth. They made good weapons of iron. Some of them became farmers. Those near the empire learned a little about Rome. But they still had no cities. Their homes were still log



A map showing the lands for which the little kings fought

huts. Their ways of living remained simple and crude.

For a long time the Romans and the barbarians in the north had little trouble. Then whole tribes of barbarians began to move toward the

Roman Empire. We do not know exactly why they began to move. Some moved because their homelands had become crowded. Other tribes moved because fiercer barbarians from the East had driven them from their homes.

The barbarians traveled very slowly. They had heavy wagons drawn by oxen. There were no roads, and most of Europe was covered with thick forests. The people had to find a way among the trees for their wagons. They had to cross rivers and marshes. They had to find grass for their animals. And they had to find food for themselves. Sometimes they stayed in one place for several years. Then they built huts and raised crops. People lived their whole lives moving from one place to another.

A boy rode in a wagon while he was a very small child. When he grew older, he helped herd the animals. When he became a young man, he was made a warrior and helped protect the people from attack. When he became an old man, he was not strong enough to be a warrior. Then he drove a team of oxen or helped to herd the cattle and sheep. Still his tribe was moving on.

Thus many tribes moved toward the south and the west. Some moved long distances. Some did not move very far. They might travel only a few months.

At last barbarian tribes came to the edge of the Roman Empire. They asked to be allowed to settle inside the empire. The Roman officials gave some of the tribes land in the empire. Perhaps this was a mistake.

Years passed—many, many years. More and more barbarians moved into the empire. Some asked for land, and the Romans gave it to them. Some came as warriors and tried to take land for themselves. Roman armies defeated the warriors but allowed the people to settle in the empire.

Barbarians in the empire learned Roman ways. They married into Roman

families. Thousands of their young men enlisted in the Roman armies. They were good soldiers. Barbarians became high officials in the Roman Empire.

Then suddenly the barbarians began to come in larger and larger numbers. They did not ask for land. They fought Roman armies and defeated them. Whole tribes fought their way into the empire. They were led by chiefs who called themselves kings. The barbarian kings took over parts of the empire and set up little kingdoms of their own.

Why did so many barbarians suddenly crowd into the Roman Empire? There was a reason. The barbarians were running away from a more terrible enemy, the Huns. Of course, the Huns were barbarians, too. Their homeland was far away in Asia. They were herdsmen and lived on wide grass lands. They had strong, fast horses, and they spent most of their time on horseback. For many years bands of Huns had been riding into eastern Europe. More and more of them came. They fought their way farther and farther west.

The barbarians of Europe were used to wars. Their tribes fought many

Barbarian warriors



wars with one another. Barbarian armies had defeated Roman armies many times. The barbarian warriors were brave, and they liked fighting. But they did not like to fight the Huns.

All Europe was terrified by the Huns. They even looked terrifying. They did not look like any people that the barbarians had ever seen. Roman writers say they were short and dark-skinned. They had coarse, straight black hair. Their faces were wide, with small, upturned noses. Their clothes were made of skins of animals. Shouting wildly, the Huns galloped into battle on their fast horses.

Some of the barbarians fought the Huns and were defeated. Some left their homes and ran away as soon as they heard the Huns were coming. Tribe after tribe of barbarians crowded into the Roman Empire.

The Huns moved up the valley of the Danube River, farther and farther. Their leader, Attila, dreamed of a great empire stretching across Europe. It seemed that nothing could stop him until he reached the Atlantic Ocean.

Rome was no longer powerful. Barbarians had already set up kingdoms in lands that had once belonged to the Roman Empire. Attila must have thought there was no one strong enough to stop him. He crossed the Rhine River into Gaul. There, at last, he was stopped.

A tribe of barbarians had set up a kingdom in western Gaul. They had been enemies of Rome, but now they joined the Romans to fight the Huns. There were really two armies, a Roman army and a barbarian army. Both were commanded by a Roman general.

A great battle was fought in the year 451. It is called the Battle of Chalons. The Romans and barbarians defeated the Huns. Attila and his men retreated to the eastern side of the Rhine, then rode southward into Italy. The people of Italy were terrified. Whenever the fierce Huns appeared, the Italians ran away. They left their farms and their cities. One group went to live on some small islands near the shore. The little settlement they started became the great city of Venice. You can find it on the map on page 134.

The coming of the Huns



When the Huns came close to Rome, a strange thing happened. The head of the Church in Rome was Pope Leo I. There was no army to defend Rome. Leo and some of the officers of the Church dressed themselves in their richest robes. They went out to meet Attila and to plead with him to spare the city. Attila did spare Rome, and soon led his men back to the Danube. There he died the next year. Soon afterward the Huns were defeated by some of the

people they had conquered. They never again tried to rule Europe.

The Roman Empire of the West went on for twenty-five years after the Battle of Chalons. Barbarians took over more and more of the land. Rome itself was captured and almost destroyed. At last, in 476, a barbarian became ruler of Italy. After that year there was no Roman emperor in the West. The Roman Empire of the East lasted much longer, as you will learn.

Western Europe under the Rule of Little Kings

The Roman Empire was gone. Roman ways of living were gone. The peace and safety of Roman rule were only a memory. Now for many years living was hard and dangerous. For several hundred years there was no peace or safety anywhere in western Europe.

These long years are called the Dark Ages. They seem dark because they were years of war and hardship. They seem dark because we do not know much about them. Civilization almost disappeared. Very little writing has come down to our time from the Dark Ages.

The Dark Ages

You have seen how barbarian chiefs led their people into the lands of the Roman Empire and set up kingdoms. Each king and his warriors took what they could conquer and keep. Each king fought to get more land. If he thought he could take a part of his neighbor's land, he fought for it. Land was conquered by one king and then by another, over and over again. We may think of these rulers as little kings because the lands they held were small.

Their kingdoms were only scraps of what had been a great empire.

Wars were not always between two kings. Often one of the king's officers would try to make himself king. If he could get many warriors to join him, he might succeed. When a king died, there was usually a war over who was to take his place.

What about the people who had been farmers, craftsmen, and traders in the Roman Empire? Their great-great-great-grandchildren were living in the little barbarian kingdoms. They found life much harder and less pleasant than their great-great-great-grandfathers had found it. Among them lived people who belonged to the barbarian tribes. There was little difference in civilization now between the barbarians and those whose great-great-great-grandfathers had been proud Romans.

In better times farmers had raised plenty of food. They had had enough for themselves and their families and some left over to sell. Now farmers raised only enough for themselves. And they had to hide what they raised.

About harvest time, as likely as not, warriors would come storming across the land and steal all the crops. They would kill and eat the animals right before the eyes of the farmers who had raised them. They would take all they could carry and then destroy the rest. Thus food became scarce, so scarce that many people died of hunger.

Craftsmen were no better off than farmers. The invading warriors stole their goods. They even destroyed the materials of which the craftsmen could have made more goods.

Because farmers did not raise enough food, and people no longer made many things to sell, tradesmen and shopkeepers had to go out of business. Trade almost disappeared. Because there was so little trade, carpenters, weavers, doctors, dyers, lawyers, teachers, and barbers did not have much to do, either.

Without trade, people cannot live in cities. They must farm. They can get food only by raising it themselves. Now people left the Roman cities. Some cities were burned and destroyed in the wars. Others were left with only a few people. Buildings fell into ruins. The paving of Roman roads was broken and grass

grew in the cracks. Roman civilization was almost forgotten.

The little kings were not very powerful and could not keep order in their kingdoms. They could not keep their own warriors from fighting with one another. They could not keep bands of robbers from roaming over the country. Wars, quarreling warriors, and robbers all made living harder for the farmers. Safety and protection were what the people of the Dark Ages needed more than anything else.

In every neighborhood some people were better off than others. There were landowners who had just enough land to make a living. There were others who had much more land. Some had owned their land since the times of the Roman Empire. Others had been given their land because they were good fighters. The barbarian kings gave gifts of land to the warriors who helped them enlarge their kingdoms. A man who owned a large piece of land had many people working for him. He gave them weapons, and so he had a little army of his own. With this little army he could drive away robbers and small bands of warriors.

At last many farmers decided to give up their land because it was better to have protection than to own land. So they went to the nearest large landowner and agreed to give him their farms. They could go on farming the land but had to give part of their crops to the landowner. They had to help work his own land and had to fight in his army. In return, the landowner protected them and their crops. This had happened in some places even before the end of the Roman Empire.





Working for the landowner

Thus the great landowners acquired more and more lands. In time they held nearly all the land. They were known as counts or barons or dukes. All were called nobles. The nobles were lords of the lands they held. They ruled the people on their lands.

A new way of living

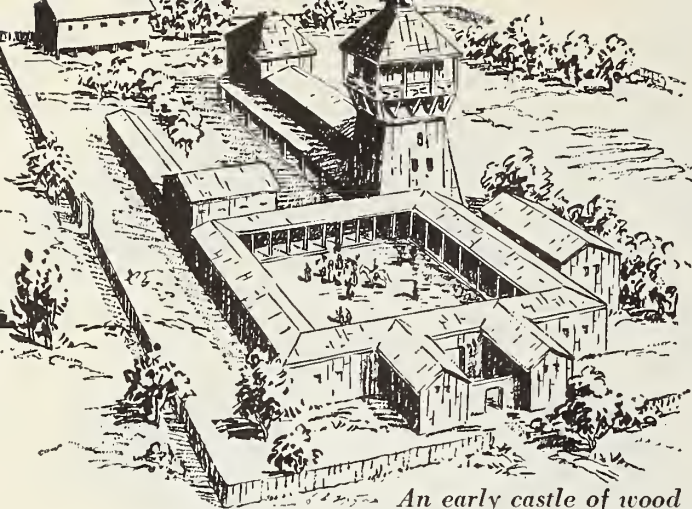
Slowly a new way of living was growing up in western Europe. This way of living brought greater safety and order to the lives of the people. The times we call the Dark Ages were ended. The kings still had little power. The nobles had their own small armies and ruled the people who lived on their lands.

The less powerful nobles promised to fight for the more powerful ones. A great duke might have many counts in his army. Each count brought his own fighting men. In return, the count's lands were protected. If someone attacked the count, the duke would bring his army to protect the count's land.

Of course, nobles did not always fight only to protect their lands from their neighbors. Sometimes they fought to get land from their neighbors. Sometimes they fought because they had quarreled with their neighbors. And sometimes they fought to help their king. The king could call for all the fighting men in his kingdom, but they did not always go. Often nobles and their armies had to fight invaders from outside their own countries. You will learn later how invaders called Northmen came from the north and how invaders called Moors came from the south.

In time, much of western Europe was divided into small pieces of land called manors. Each manor belonged to a lord. The lord might have several manors, or he might have only one.

On the manor was a village of little one-room houses. The houses were poorly built and very dark, for they had no windows. The farmers were called *peasants*. Each peasant had farm land



An early castle of wood

on the manor. The land all belonged to the lord, but the peasant thought of the fields as his own. He could use the land all his life and could leave it to his sons when he died.

The peasants were not slaves, but they were not free, either. They could not move away from the manor. They had to make a living for the lord. The lord did no work on the land. He was always free to fight.

Rules were different on different manors, but the peasants usually had to give the lord a small part of their crops. The lord always kept part of the land for himself. The peasants had to do the work on this land, but the crops belonged to the lord.

Not all the manor was divided into fields. Some was left as pasture. All the peasants could use the pasture for their farm animals. The lord's animals, too, grazed on the pasture.

Every manor had forest land, too. Here the peasants got wood for their fires and for the lord's fires. Trees were cut and sawed into lumber for use on the manor. Pigs roamed in the forest and fed on acorns, nuts, and roots.

The lord lived in a manor house or in a castle. You may have read stories about great castles of stone. Such castles were not built for hundreds of years after the end of the Roman Empire. Early castles were made of heavy logs trimmed flat, so that they could be fitted closely together. Around the castle was a wall or stockade. It was made of logs driven into the ground side by side.

The courtyard inside the stockade was large enough to hold all the people of the manor. If an enemy came, the peasants hurried inside the stockade with their families and their animals. They took also their farm tools and the crops that had been harvested.

It was not often that enemies could capture a castle. They might destroy the growing crops and burn the village, but the people were usually safe. Even manor houses were built so that they could be defended.

For hundreds of years, living changed very little for the peasants. Their houses were still small and dark. They had to work hard to support themselves and the lords. There were still many wars. The lords always had to be ready to fight and to protect their lands. They were always looking for better ways of fighting and of defending their lands. Instead of inventing better tools, people invented better weapons and armor. Instead of building better houses, they built better castles.

In time huge castles of brick and stone replaced the wooden castles of earlier days. Every large castle had a great tower and a number of smaller towers. In these towers guards were stationed, always on the lookout for

enemies. Around the castle ran a wall often ten feet thick. Here and there along the wall were other towers from which soldiers fought when enemies tried to take the castle. Around the wall ran a deep ditch, called a moat. The moat was filled with water and was another means of keeping the enemy from entering the castle.

A visit to a castle

Let's mount flying horses and go galloping back hundreds of years to visit one of these castles. Our flying horses skim over the ocean and come to land on the northern shore of the Mediterranean Sea. They go galloping off to the north, over rough and rutty roads, through forests and farm lands and villages, toward a cliff on which a stone castle stands.

How large that castle is! How high its towers! How strong its walls! But it looks very gloomy. Even the bright sunshine seems to fade on those high, dark walls and towers. As we ride nearer, the castle seems to shut out the blue sky, the fields, and the forests near by.

Now we come to the moat. There is no bridge across it. Suddenly a trumpet sounds a long, clear blast. The guards in the tower have seen us. They know they have nothing to fear from us; so they lower a bridge, called a drawbridge, across the moat. Now we go galloping over the muddy waters of the moat. A great oak door in the wall swings open. A high iron gate is lifted. The drawbridge, the door, and the gate are managed by men in the tower.

Slowly we ride into the large courtyard. Servants come to help us get off

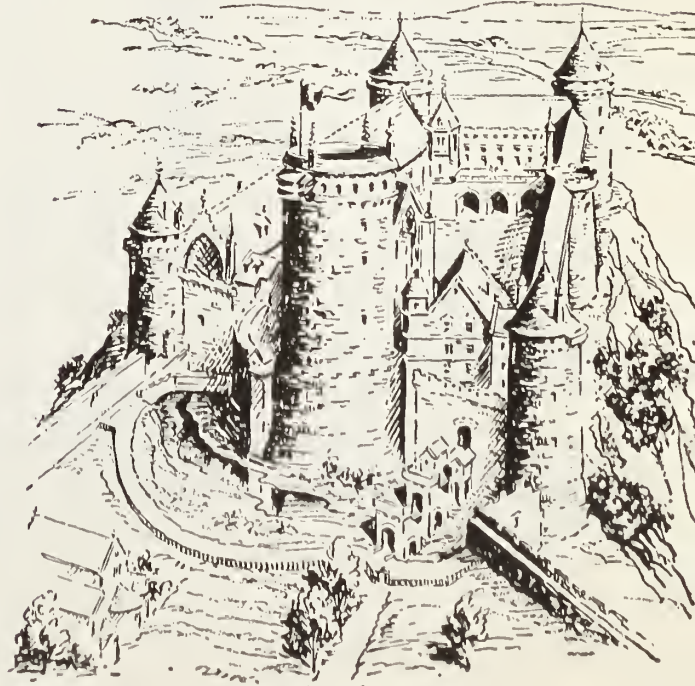
our horses and to lead them away into one of the many stables.

We look around. Near the castle stands a building where the cooking is done. There are gardens where peasants raise vegetables for the people of the castle. In the distance stands a little church where the people of the manor may worship. On the bank of the river is the mill where the grain is ground into meal between large, flat stones. The mill wheel which moves the stones is turned by the waters of the river.

Before we reach the inner court, we wait for another door to be opened, and another iron gate to be lifted. That done, we climb a narrow, winding stairway, a dark and gloomy stairway, lighted only by flickering torches.

We go carefully up the steps and come at last to an enormous hall which is both living room and dining room. It is also the sleeping room for some of the people who live at the castle. We compare the hall in size with halls

A later castle of stone



we know at home. We think: "A thousand people could sit comfortably in this great hall."

The floor is of stone, covered with dried grass, leaves, and small twigs. At one end of the room a fire roars in a wide fireplace of stone. It is the only means of heating the large hall. On the walls hang tapestries into which have been woven pictures of many colors. The pictures tell stories.

One tapestry shows a child in a manger, with angels hovering above his head, while at a distance shepherds keep watch over their flocks. Another tapestry shows lords and ladies on horseback returning from the hunt. A third shows soldiers in armor attacking the walls of a great castle.

Now servants come into the hall. They carry long boards, which they set up as tables by resting the ends on trestles. Around the sides of the room

are many chests. These hold much of the silver and gold that belong to the lord, and some of the jewels and clothing that belong to his lady. Some of the chests serve as chairs.

A door opens. The lord of the manor enters the room. Behind him comes his lady, and behind her come members of the household. There are warriors, called knights, who live at the castle. There are young men, called squires, who hope to become knights, and there are still younger boys, called pages, who will become squires. There are women whose duty it is to wait on the lady of the castle. Such women as these are called ladies in waiting. There are young girls who hope to become ladies in waiting. Everyone in the company is dressed in rich clothing.

All take their places at the long tables. Some sit on large chairs; some, on stools. Some sit on long benches.

Dinner in the great hall



Servants come into the room with platters and bowls of meat—beef, pork, and the flesh of deer and of fowl. These people eat much meat. They also eat bread and vegetables such as carrots, cabbages, and turnips.

There are no knives on the table. Each man wears a knife fastened to his belt. He uses this to cut up his meat. If there is a lady next to him, he cuts her meat with his knife. There are spoons, but no forks.

Presently the lord picks up a bone, gnaws the meat off, then tosses the bone over his shoulder to his favorite hunting dog. Other dogs snatch at the bone, growling and snapping.

When the dinner is over, pages come with bowls of silver or pewter, filled with water, and towels of linen. The pages pass these along the table so that the diners may wash their hands.

Now a group of jugglers enters the room to entertain the lord and his household. One of the jugglers tosses colored balls into the air—one, two, three, four, five, six of them. He keeps them all going with such speed that they look like a circle of color. Another juggler does tricks with sharp knives, tossing them and catching them. Still another does tricks of tumbling. This one has a painted face like a clown in a circus. He wears bells on his fingers and bells on his toes.

Some of these entertainers lived at one castle year in and year out. Others traveled about from castle to castle. They were always welcome because they brought news about other lords and ladies. Sometimes they even brought news from distant parts of the world. Now and then wandering singers, called



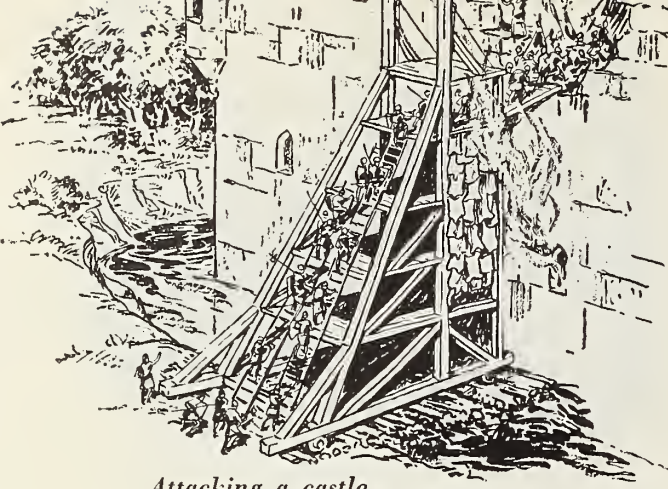
minstrels, entertained at the castles. They sang songs or recited long stories of brave deeds.

At last the lord and his household leave the table. Then the boards are taken down. Did you know that we get our words “boarding” and “boarding house” from this custom of dining on boards hundreds of years ago?

When the boards and trestles have been removed, young and old amuse themselves in one way or another. Some of the older people play chess; others play checkers. The younger people play “Blind Man’s Buff.”

The next morning the lord and his men hurry away. They are going hunting in the great forest. Today the ladies are not joining them, though they often do. The lady of the manor goes to see about some household task, taking one of her ladies in waiting with her. Another lady in waiting sits by the fire and teaches a young girl to sew. Still another works at a fine piece of tapestry. Two ladies examine plants of which they hope to make medicine. Others sit chatting and sewing.

Now we hurry out into the courtyard, mount our flying horses, and go galloping away. But first we turn to look once more at the great building.



Attacking a castle

How did enemies ever manage to capture such huge castles, with their strong walls, their lofty towers, their heavy doors, and their deep moats?

Sometimes the enemy built a wooden tower on wheels. Such a tower could be rolled close to the walls of a castle. Then the soldiers could shoot directly into the castle courtyard. Sometimes the enemy built tunnels from the outside right under the moat and into the castle itself.

Sometimes the walls of a castle were battered down with weapons called battering-rams. Sometimes great stones were thrown over the walls with the use of a catapult, a machine which worked something like a slingshot.

When they had failed to capture a castle, enemy soldiers would sometimes camp outside the courtyard with all the weapons they could get together. There they would wait, daring the lord to come out and fight. Perhaps the lord thought he had a better chance of saving himself, his people, his soldiers, and his castle by staying within the safety of the walls. But to do that he must have stored in the castle enough food to last a long, long time.

Knights and chivalry

You remember that in the Dark Ages living was simple and crude and dangerous. People wanted protection so much that they were willing even to give up their land to get it. Every noble was expected to be a skillful fighter. No one was so honored and respected as a brave warrior.

Usually, nobles became knights. A knight was a warrior who had been specially trained from the time he was a small boy. He had to know how to behave, as well as how to fight.

When he became a young man he was made a knight. He had to promise to behave as a knight should. Knights were expected to be loyal, courteous, and brave. Such excellent behavior was called *chivalry*. We still speak of a chivalrous action. We really mean behavior worthy of a knight.

You will see how a boy was trained to be a knight and what he had to promise. A young noble began his training for knighthood when he was about seven years old. He did not receive that training in the castle of his father, but was sent to the castle of a friend of his father. He first served as a page. A page had various duties in the household of the lord. He learned the importance of telling the truth and of behaving honorably at all times.

Besides those things, the page learned something of the history of his own family. He learned of the brave deeds of his father and grandfather, of the wars they had fought. He was taught the history of other noble families. He learned to ride a horse and to use weapons. Not many pages were taught

to read and write and to do arithmetic problems. Such learning was not thought to be important.

If a page had learned his lessons well, he became a squire at the age of fourteen. His training went on until he reached the age of twenty-one, and then, if he had done well, he was made a knight.

When a squire was ready for knighthood, he went through a very important ceremony. To get ready for this ceremony, he first took a bath. The bath was important because it was a sign that the young man was beginning a new and clean life.

After his bath, the young man lay down as a sign that all good knights might hope for rest after helping others. Then he put on a white robe as another sign that he would keep his life clean. Over the white robe he put a red robe as a sign that he would give his blood to protect the church.

Dressed in these robes, the squire knelt all night in prayer in a church before an altar on which were his weapons. The next morning at the church services he received the blessing of the priest. Then he went into the courtyard where all the lords and ladies and knights had gathered.

The squire stood before his lord to receive his golden spurs, his sword, his shield, his armor, and his helmet. His armor was made of iron rings or of pieces of steel shaped and fitted together to cover most of his body. His helmet was made of wood or iron.

Then the squire knelt before the lord and bowed his head. He promised always to be brave and honorable, to protect the church, to protect the weak, to honor all women. These promises made, the lord struck the squire on the shoulder three times with his sword and said in a very solemn voice: "In the name of God, St. Michael, and St.

"I dub thee knight"



George, I dub thee knight. Be loyal, courteous, and brave.”

The knight arose. The lords and ladies helped him put on his armor. A squire brought his horse. The young knight mounted the horse; then he rode around the courtyard, feeling very proud and brave. His armor and the armor of his horse had been polished until the metal reflected the light like a mirror. The knight looked very handsome indeed. All the people in the courtyard praised him. Presently he would ride away to do brave deeds.

Outdoor games and sports of nobles

Each land and each age in the history of people had its own kind of entertainment or sport. The Greeks had the Olympian Games. The Romans had the gladiator fights and chariot races. Here in America people enjoy baseball and football and the movies.

The lords and ladies in the days of chivalry had their favorite sports, too. One was the tournament, which was a kind of make-believe battle in which the

knights fought. Another was hunting on horseback with trained dogs or with trained birds called falcons.

Make-believe battle was good training for real war. The knights liked the tournaments because they enjoyed showing their skill and daring before the lovely ladies who came to watch.

The king of the land usually set the time and the place for the tournament. He sent out messengers, called heralds, to make such an announcement. Then lords and ladies put aside everything else to make ready for the big event.

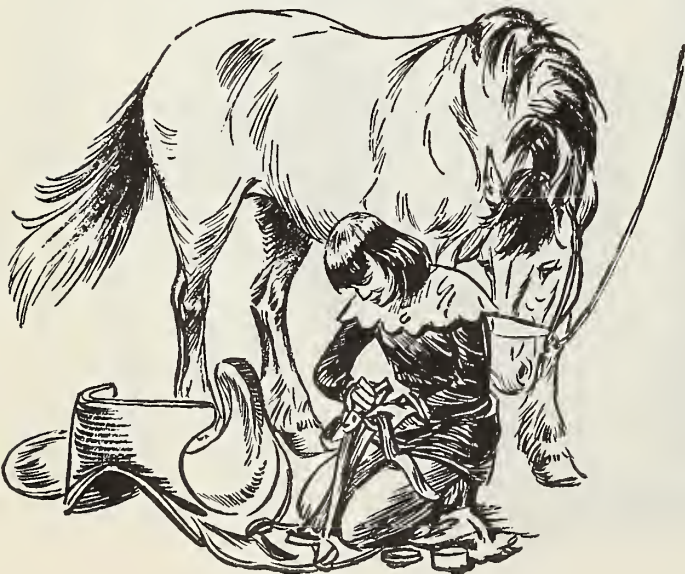
When the knights arrived at the place of the tournament, a trumpet was sounded. The drawbridge was let down, the gates were opened, and the knights went galloping into the courtyard on their fine horses. The next day squires and pages were as busy as bees, polishing armor and helmets and oiling the leather of the harness, making sure that everything was in good order.

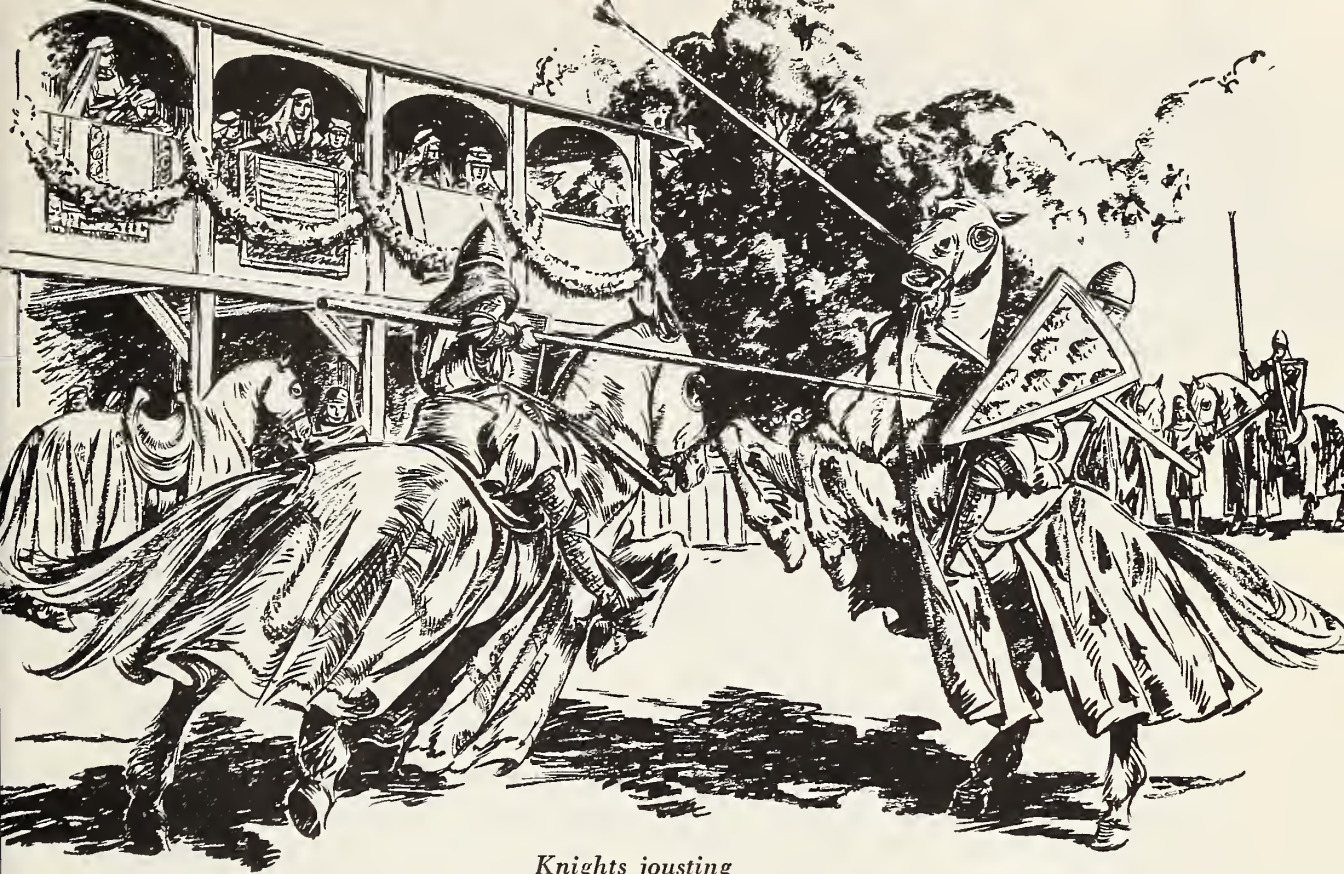
In the courtyard a plot of ground, one hundred fifty yards by fifty yards, had been laid off. On this great field the make-believe battle would be fought. Stands were set up for the ladies, from which they could watch and act as judges. On one side was a place from which the servants and peasants might watch the tournament.

The first day and often the second were spent in jousts. In the joust one knight rode against another knight, and each tried to throw the other from his horse. In the real tournament many knights rode against one another, trying to throw one another.

On the morning of the tournament a herald announced the rules. No knight might fight another while the other's

A squire oiling harness for his knight





Knights jousting

back was turned. No knight might take off his helmet more than twice unless he was having trouble with his horse. No knight might use a sharp sword. All were to use lances. If a knight struck a horse with his lance, he would lose many points.

At a given signal the knights lined up opposite one another on the plot of ground. At another signal they put spurs to their horses and charged against one another. Often a knight was thrown from his horse and badly wounded. But the tournament went on.

The ladies in the stands waved handkerchiefs and banners. Each lady called upon her favorite knight to show bravery and skill. Each knight honored his favorite lady by wearing her handkerchief, her glove, or her sleeve. In those

days ladies' sleeves were made separate from their gowns and could be taken off as gloves are taken off.

After the tournament a great feast was held, and prizes were awarded. Among the prizes were things of great value, such as beautiful robes, cups of gold or silver, jeweled swords, fine tapestries, rings set with precious stones. Singers and other entertainers amused the guests, and usually a great ball was held in the evening.

Tournaments did not occur very often in a year. But hunting could be enjoyed at almost any time. Ladies and lords thought it great sport. Besides, it provided much food for the household of the castle.

Every lord owned many dogs that were trained to hunt large game. Such



dogs would find the scent of a wild boar, a deer, or a wolf. Then they would set up a loud howl and take off. Lords and ladies, armed with long spears and bows and arrows, put spurs to their horses and went galloping after the dogs.

They rode through forest and pasture. They leaped over hedges. They splashed through streams. Where the dogs led, the hunters followed. And if the dogs led through a field which a peasant had just planted with crops, what did it matter? To the lords and ladies a peasant was a very unimportant person. It didn't matter to them that he might have to do the planting all over again. So the lords and ladies thought, if they thought about it at all. Their pleasures were more important than the poor peasant.

Many ladies liked hunting with falcons better than following the hounds. It was not quite so dangerous. The falcon was chained to the hunter's arm. Its head was covered with a little hood. When a partridge or a duck or some other small game had been sighted, the hood was removed and the chain was unfastened. The falcon flew into the air. It circled. It swooped down on the unlucky bird and held the poor creature fast until a hunter came galloping on his horse to seize it.

Often the hunt was followed by a game supper. Seated before the roaring fire in the great hall, the lords and ladies talked over the events of the day and boasted about their dogs, their falcons, their horses.

The life of the peasants

The lord and his household lived rather comfortably. But the peasants who farmed the lands and did the other work had very hard lives indeed. They did not have much chance of improving their lives either. They had to live as they did if they were to have the protection of the lord and his castle. And they needed protection.

In order to get protection, a peasant had to promise the lord to do certain things. He had to agree to work for the lord and to give him a part of everything he raised. Thus he might drive his hogs to eat acorns in the forest, but he had to give the lord some of the hogs when they were fattened. He might take his cattle to the lord's pastures, but he had to give up some of them. He might take his grain to be ground in the mill, but he had to leave a part of the grain to pay for the grinding.

If a peasant got into trouble, he had to pay a fine. Since he was tried in

the lord's own court, the poor peasant was often found guilty of wrongs which he did not do. That need not seem so strange to you when you learn that the fines helped to make the lord still richer. There was nothing the peasant could do about such a wrong except, perhaps, get angry. And that didn't help. A peasant was not even allowed to marry without the lord's consent. You can see that peasants had to pay a very high price for protection.

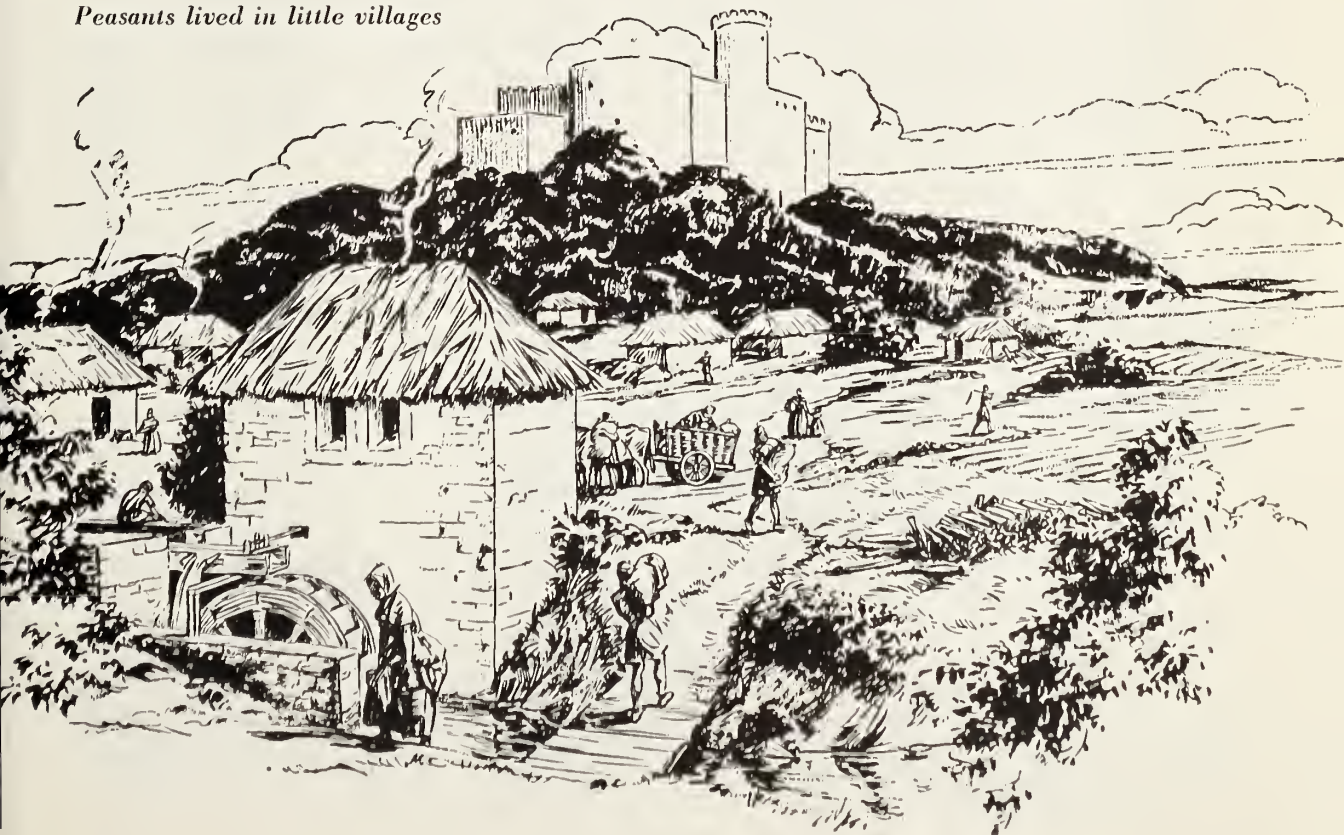
A tenth of what the peasant raised or made had to be given to the church. This was called a tithe. If the lord collected one-tenth and the tithe was one-tenth, the peasant had eight-tenths or four-fifths for himself. Often much more was collected from the peasant. Then he had very little left for himself and his family.

Some peasants worked as servants at the lord's castle. They cooked. They

carried water and wood. They took care of the gardens. They worked in little shops where they made shoes or cloth or armor or any of the other things that were needed by the lord's household. Most peasants, however, farmed the lands of the manor or tended the flocks. They were allowed small strips of land on which to raise crops for themselves. But such lands were not really their own.

Peasants lived in little villages outside the walls of the castle. In times of war they moved into the courtyard of the castle. Their homes were simple one-room huts set on either side of a narrow street. Smoke from the hearth went out through a hole in the roof. Wooden shutters covered the window openings. A few stools, a rude table, and a bed of straw made up the furnishings. Very often the stable was a part of the poor little hut.

Peasants lived in little villages



Neither the peasants nor their homes were clean. Men, women, and children slept in the clothing they had worn all day. When darkness came, they lay down on their rude beds of straw. Sometimes peasant women took soiled clothing and washed it in the shallow waters of a stream. Very little water was brought to the hut because it had to be carried from some distance. There was much sickness among these poor people.

The only way in which a peasant might change his way of living was by running away. But that was dangerous. If he were caught and taken back to the lord whom he had promised to serve, he might be severely punished.

If he ran away to some other place and managed to keep from being caught for a year and a day, he was free from his promises to the lord. But during that year and day he had no protection. If he went to some other manor after running away, he might be more fairly treated than he had been. But there was always the chance that a new lord would be less fair, less kind.

Sometimes a great lord went away to a war and never came back to his castle. Then his peasants were free. They might go to another manor for protection, or they might go to a city in the hope of finding work. Sometimes, during great famine or widespread sickness, a great many peasants died. Then those who had managed to stay alive might have better times for a while. Because there were not so many of them, they might be able to make better bargains with the lords of the manors.

The peasants had some pleasures, of course. They took part in the holidays of the church, especially at Christmas

and Easter. They danced and sang on the village green at the time of the May festival. Sometimes the dancers and jugglers and singers who visited the great castle came also to the villages of the peasants. Some lords invited the peasants and their families to the castle once in a while just to give young and old a good time.

No matter how the peasants lived, or what happened to them, or what pleasures they had, they lived hard lives. They were not slaves, and that was good. But they were not much better off than slaves, and that was bad. Yet, later, a time came when the lives of such workers were happier and easier. Trade grew again. Towns and cities came to life once more. Again things were made to sell. People could do the work they chose to do. They could be craftsmen or tradesmen or farmers. They could be healthy and happy.

How the church made life better

In those days the leaders of the church set up rules for living. They also helped to keep order. They sent out missionaries to teach people better ways of living. The church did a great deal to keep learning alive. Its leaders saved many ancient books and records from being destroyed. They saw to it that records were kept of what went on year after year. If they had not done this, no one would now know what went on in those days. Most of such records were made by a certain group of men of the church called monks. The monks devoted all of their lives to religion and to the work of the church.

The work done by the monks is, perhaps, more important to us now than

any other work that was done at that time. Printing had not yet been invented, and so the only way to make copies of manuscripts or records was to do it by hand. Many of the ancient books, or manuscripts, of the Greeks and the Romans and of other early peoples probably would have been lost forever if the monks had not copied them.

The accounts of what was going on in the world at that time are also important. If the monks had not written such accounts, we should not now know how the people of that long-ago time lived or what they did.

The monks made their own writing materials. They made vellum of the skins of sheep or goats. Vellum was strong and tough and much more lasting than ordinary paper. They made their own ink in many lovely colors, using indigo and other dyes.

The first letter of the word at the beginning of a paragraph was always made larger than the rest, and it was beautifully decorated. Sometimes the borders of pages were also decorated with flowers, birds, and vines.

The books were carefully bound in silver, in gold, or in iron. They were made so that they could be locked to the shelves. Not even a lord or a king was allowed to take a book from the shelves without the consent of the monks. No one was allowed to take a book away from the library. Books were so expensive, and were made with so much care and hard labor, that they were highly treasured.

Some of the books made by the monks have been preserved to this day. Others are known because copies of them were made after printing was invented.

The monks did another great work that was like a bright light in the Dark Ages. They helped the peasants by teaching them better ways of farming and of taking care of their animals. They taught them habits of cleanliness. They gave them help when sickness went through the land. They gave them food and clothing and shelter when they were in trouble. And that is not all. The monks taught the peasants ways of making many new things which in time would mean much to all people.

A monk carefully copies a manuscript



The History Workshop

As you now know, the once glorious Roman Empire of the West was overrun by barbarians. Many of the wonderful things the Romans had built were destroyed by the barbarians. Ways of living changed a great deal from what they were among the Romans. This was the beginning of what we call the Dark Ages. Let us turn back to those long-ago days. Let us see how living was different from what it was in the days of the Romans. Let us see if the people who came after the Romans lived at all as you do today.

Something to compare

The ways of living in the Dark Ages were very different from those of the Romans. Tell about some of the things the Romans had that disappeared during the Dark Ages.

An imagination game

Pretend that you are a little boy in the days of lords, knights, and squires. First, pretend that you live in a manor house. You are the son of a lord. Describe your home and tell what you will probably be when you have grown up. Tell what you would have to do to become a knight.

Second, pretend that you are the son of a peasant. You live on the lord's land. Tell what kind of house you live in. What pleasures do you and your parents have? Which would you rather be, the son of a lord or the son of a peasant?

Are the ways of living during these days like those of the Roman Empire? Are they like those of the Greeks? the Egyptians? Are they like yours today? Explain your answers. Are some of the earlier peoples you learned about more civilized than the people of the Dark Ages? Why, or why not?

Choosing the correct word

The sentences in the next column will tell you about the days of kings and castles.

Choose, from the list that follows, the correct words to use in place of the xxxxx's.

| | | |
|------------|-------|--------|
| barbarians | monks | manors |
| Dark Ages | joust | |

1. The xxxxx, who lived north of the Roman Empire in Europe, invaded the empire from the north.

2. The long years of war and hardship which followed the downfall of the Romans are called the xxxxx.

3. After the Dark Ages, much of western Europe was divided into small pieces of land, called xxxxx.

4. In a tournament in the days of lords and ladies, knights rode against each other in what was called a xxxxx.

5. The only records kept during the years of wars were books which were written by hand by xxxxx.

Something to make

How would you like to build a castle, just like those in the days of lords and ladies? You won't be able to make your manor of stone, of course, but you can build the castle, walls, and towers of cardboard. Perhaps you can make a moat around the castle and even a drawbridge. The pictures on pages 140, 141, and 149 will help you with the planning. This will be most fun if a group of you build it together.

Those of you who would rather draw than build can make a drawing of a stone castle, complete with a drawbridge and guards.

Books to read

Here are some books that will tell you more about the days of lords and knights. *When Knights Were Bold*, by Eva March Tappan. *Lord and Vassal* ("History Stories of Other Lands"), by Arthur Guy Terry. *The Story of Roland*, by James Baldwin. *Little Shepherd of Provence*, by Evaleen Stein.

Northern Sea Rovers and Viking Ships





Northern Sea Rovers and Viking Ships

Viking Northmen at Home and on the Sea

"From the fury of the Northmen, O Lord, deliver us." While the kings were building up their little kingdoms, that prayer was said every Sunday in thousands of churches. Everywhere along the coasts of western Europe and far up the rivers, people lived in fear of long black ships and terrible warriors. The ships, driven by long oars and bright-colored sails, swept along the coasts and up the rivers.

The warriors landed in any bay or inlet and took what they wanted. They took the farmers' crops and the goods of the merchants. They rowed their

long black ships into the seaports and burned the towns. They even carried away the treasures of gold and silver and beautiful cloth from the churches. The Northmen were not yet Christians. Churches meant nothing to them.

People called these raiders Northmen because they came from the far north of Europe. Their homes were in the lands that are now called Scandinavia. These lands are Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. The people were called Danes, Norwegians, and Swedes. They called their sea rovers Vikings. We often use that name for them, too.



Sometimes the Northmen did not come as robbers. They came as traders. When a fleet of Viking ships swept into a harbor, all the townspeople watched anxiously. If the Vikings hung a white shield on the mast, they had come to trade. If they hung up a red shield, they had come to attack the town.

In time the Vikings conquered and settled other lands in Europe. Some of them settled in northern France. Others settled in the British Isles across the North Sea from their homelands. Still others traveled to the east, across the Baltic Sea. They rowed up long rivers and then down other long rivers that flowed south. Thus they crossed Europe and came to the Black Sea and Constantinople. There some of these tall blond warriors became the most honored soldiers of the eastern Roman emperors.

The Vikings began their raids a little before the year 800. For three hundred years they were the world's greatest sea rovers. This story tells only a few of their adventures.

Vikings at home

Usually it was only the young men of the northern lands who went on Viking journeys. At home most of the Northmen were farmers. Grandparents, children and grandchildren, uncles and aunts and cousins, all lived together. Forty or fifty people might make up the family. A farm was like a village.

A house was made up of many rooms, each under its own roof. Roofed-over halls connected these rooms. Around the house there were other buildings. There were buildings for the horses, cows, sheep, pigs, and even for the geese. There were barns where hay was kept for the animals. There were storehouses for food. There was a blacksmith shop. If the farm was on the shore, there was a boathouse.

From such a farm the young men sailed away in the early spring on a Viking journey. They might be gone for several years, but usually they stayed away only one summer. On a day in late fall they came back. The



homecoming of any one Viking ship may never have happened exactly as this story tells it, but hundreds of ships came home in about this way.

With so many people working on the farm, someone was sure to see the ship coming. When he shouted the news, the whole big family came crowding down to the shore. The people on the shore shouted, and an answer came

back from the ship. The ship belonged to the family on the farm. Most of the young men of the family were on it, with some of the servants, and also young men from neighboring farms.

Swiftly the ship came up the long, narrow inlet. The rows of oars, twenty to a side, flashed in the afternoon sunshine. A west wind filled the sail, gay with red and blue stripes. From the

Maps Showing the Lands of the Northmen

The Northmen lived in Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. You can find these countries on the map on this page. The map on the opposite page shows you these lands and the seas around them. You can see that they are far away from the Mediterranean lands. The places visited by the Vikings are shown. As you read the story, you will find out about these places. You will want to follow the voyages of Eric and Leif as they travel. First to the Faeroes, then to Iceland, and on to Greenland. On and on until they have crossed the Atlantic Ocean and have reached North America.



top of the mast fluttered a narrow flag of red and gold. The ship itself was black. Along its sides hung the round shields of the warriors, bright as the autumn leaves along the shore. The shields were made of wood, but each one had a shining bronze knob in the center and a bronze rim at the edge. The wood was painted in bright colors. Each shield had a design painted on it, perhaps a picture of a bird, a horse, or some other animal. Most of the shields had red in their design. The Northmen liked red.

As the long black ship came nearer, two men lowered the sail. A moment more, and the oarsmen raised their oars and swung them in toward the ship. Only the steering oar, near the stern, was still in the water.

Now the ship lost speed. Slowly it drifted toward shore. The steersman moved his steering oar, and the long ship turned. It came up beside a flat rock that rose out of deep water. Ropes were tossed from the ship to the men

on shore. Then a gangplank slid over the side to rest on the rock.

Now there were noisy greetings. The people on shore wanted to know first whether everyone who had sailed on the ship had come back safely. Then they wanted to know whether the voyage had been successful. They could guess that it had been successful even before they were told. They could see that the center of the ship was piled high with bales and bundles, all carefully wrapped in cloth.

At supper that evening the grandfather of the family said they would have a party. The farm people had been too busy to visit during the summer. Now the summer's work was finished. The Vikings had come home with good stories to tell. It would be easy to find a present for each guest among the fine things they had brought.

The women talked about how long it would take them to get the house ready and to prepare food for the party. The men talked about how long it would

take to unload the ship and get it ready for winter. Finally everyone agreed upon a date three weeks away.

Early the next morning two young men mounted their horses and rode away. They were going to invite the guests to the party. One rode north and one rode south on the road that passed the farm. Two other young men got into a small boat and rowed down the inlet. Some of their guests could be reached more easily by water than by land.

In the days that followed, the crew worked on the ship. Some of the other men helped them. They carried the bales and bundles to the house. They put away the sail, the ropes, the warm fur-lined sleeping bags, the waterproof clothing made of skins, and the round shields. They took down the mast and put it and the long oars into the boat-house. Then they dragged the ship itself to shore, turned it upside down, and carried it into the boathouse. There it would rest on wooden supports until the next spring.

In the house the women were busy cleaning and cooking. They baked bread, roasted meat, and brought out the finest dishes and clothes. They made plans for places to sleep, for the guests would stay for several days.

The feast in the great hall

When the time came for the party, the guests were arriving all day long. Most of them were on horseback. They were all dressed plainly for traveling, but they had their best clothes in bundles on the backs of pack horses. Several families came in wagons. The wagons were big and heavy and clumsy,

but they were beautifully carved. They rumbled and creaked as they jolted over the rough roads.

The family and the guests dressed in their best for the party. Their everyday clothes of coarse white or brown wool had been put away. Now everyone wore gay colors. Red was a favorite color for clothing, just as it was for sails and shields. Much blue was worn also, and there were some garments of green and yellow.

The men had knee trousers that would appear to us rather shapeless. They wore long stockings which came up to the knees. Some of the men wore shirts tucked into their trousers. More of them had on tunics. These were really long, full shirts worn outside the trousers. They reached almost to the knees. All wore belts. Some of these belts were of leather, with silver or bronze buckles. Some were strips of embroidered cloth. The captain of the Viking ship had the finest belt of all. It was made of large gold rings fitted together. When the men went out of doors, most of them put on short jackets of wool, as gay in color as the rest of their clothes. For really cold weather the Northmen had longer and heavier coats, usually of fur.

The women wore long dresses, also in bright colors. They were not all made exactly alike. There were differences in style, just as we have today. For out-of-door wear the women had long capes of wool or fur.

Both men and women wore shoes of soft leather. Both men and women had much brightly colored embroidery on their clothes. There were bands of embroidery that contrasted in color with

the clothes. Some had threads of gold and silver worked into the embroidery.

Everyone wore jewelry of gold, silver, or bronze. There were rings, necklaces, arm bands, and large pins, or brooches, for fastening the clothing. The pieces were decorated with figures of animals or leaves and with lines and scrolls. Many pieces were set with bright-colored jewels. The men wore as many ornaments as the women. In addition, each man wore a sword hanging from his belt. The hilts and scabbards were decorated so beautifully that they, too, were like jewelry.

The Northmen were very proud of their clothes. Grandfather looked the guests over carefully. He hoped that no one would be better dressed than the members of his own family. He was happy to see that no one looked as handsome as his own youngest son, the captain of the Viking ship.

The captain stood at the door with Grandfather to greet the guests. Long

before they reached the house, they could see him as a bright spot of color in the doorway. He had waving blond hair, almost red, and long blond mustaches. He wore a tunic of purple velvet, embroidered in gold. His trousers and long stockings were bright red. His shoes were of red leather from a land far away. The hilt of his sword and its scabbard were brightly decorated with gold.

The guests were shown into the great hall. This was really the main room of the house. We might call it the living room and dining room.

The great hall looked very cheerful and gay. Down the center was a long row of open fires. This part of the room had no floor, and the fires were built on the bare earth. The sides and ends of the room had wooden floors. The floors were like two steps, very wide, all around the room. Chairs stood in rows around the room on these step-like floors. Most of the chairs were

They liked nothing better than a feast



beautifully carved. They looked stiff and hard, but they were made more comfortable with cushions. At one end of the room was a wide table. Here and there around the walls were big carved chests. Everything that had to be put away was kept in these chests.

The sun set early on this evening in late fall. Darkness had fallen outside. Inside the hall the servants piled more wood on the fires. The flames leaped high. They lighted up the gay clothes of the people and the bright strips of cloth on the walls. Jewelry sparkled. Where arms and armor hung on the walls, there were gleams of polished iron and bronze. A few lamps made little points of brighter light. These lamps were shallow bowls hollowed out of stone. They were filled with fish oil. Wicks floated in the oil and burned slowly.

For all the color and brightness in the room, the upper part looked dark and gloomy. Clouds of smoke gathered under the peaked roof. There were no chimneys. In time the smoke found its way out through holes left in the roof.

The servants came in with trestles and set them up. Then they brought wide boards. They placed the boards across the trestles, making long tables, like picnic tables. The guests did not have to move to the tables, for the tables were placed in front of them, where they sat. The women of the family watched with pride as the servants brought in linen tablecloths and spread them on the tables. Not everyone in the Northland had tablecloths, even for parties.

The Northmen liked nothing better than a feast. Everyone watched the

kitchen door when the servants brought in the food. There were great roasts of beef, mutton, pork, and deer. There was roast goose. There were stews of meat and vegetables. There were round loaves of bread, bread baked in flat, hard sheets, and bread sweetened with honey. There were fish cooked with a butter sauce, pickled fish, smoked fish, salted fish. There were pickled eggs, stacks of cheese, and bowls piled high with red and yellow apples.

At last the feast was over. Not a guest could eat another bite of anything. Then the servants brought bowls of water and towels. The guests had used their own knives to cut up their food. They had spoons, but no forks. Much of their food had to be eaten with the fingers. So the guests really needed to wash their hands.

The servants carried away the tables. As soon as each serving man or woman had finished his work, he came in and sat down near the kitchen. The people settled down for the kind of good time they enjoyed most, next to a feast.

Vikings at sea

The captain of the Viking ship began the story telling. He said that when the ship left the farm in the early spring it sailed southward, following the coast of Denmark. At night the ship was anchored in a bay or river mouth. Some of the men went ashore, built a fire, and boiled a kettle of porridge. There was salt fish to eat with the porridge. Those left on the ship took down the red-and-blue sail and made a tent of it over the center of the ship. The men slept under the tent in their fur-lined sleeping bags.





Sometimes they had a chance to fight

After a few days the ship came to a shore that ran westward. The Vikings followed this shore for many days, watching the land. When they needed grain, they helped themselves from a farmer's storehouse. If they wanted fresh meat instead of salt fish, they watched for a herd of cows or a flock of sheep. The owners seldom objected. What could a village of farmers do against a shipload of well-armed men?

Sometimes the Vikings did have a chance to fight. They liked this. Once they rowed up a wide river and came to a manor. The lord of the manor lived in a castle. When the Vikings landed on the river bank, the lord rode out with a dozen armed men. There was a good fight that day. When the captain came to this part of the story, he showed the jeweled sword, the gold ring with a ruby setting, and the shirt of mail he had taken from the lord when the fight was over. The shirt of mail was made of tiny steel rings linked together. Every man in the hall envied him this beautiful piece of armor.

Later the Viking ship came to a city. It was on the shore of a land called

France. There was an old tale that a fleet of Viking ships had once attacked this city and taken it. The captain knew better, however, than to think he could capture the city with one ship. His men rowed up the river with a white shield hanging on the mast of the ship. This meant that they wished to trade with the people in the city.

Here the captain got his tunic of purple velvet. He gave deerskins for it, as well as some money he had found in the collection box of a church a few days before. He also traded great rolls of coarse gray cloth for a few pieces of bright-colored, shining cloth such as none of the guests had ever seen before. He could see the wonder on their faces as he held the beautiful stuff up in the firelight.

The traders in the town told him it came from a land far to the east. They did not know just where this land was, or of what the cloth was made. Many traders had handled it before it came to the city in northern France. Some said it was spun by worms, as spiders spin their webs, but the captain could not believe so strange a tale.

The Viking captain told of other raids and of good bargains he had made in trading. Some of his men told of brave deeds they had done. All of them had fine things to show.

When the stories of the summer voyage were finished, Grandfather told of a journey he had made years before, when he was a young Viking. He was away from home three years. His ship sailed westward and then southward. Finally it sailed to the east into a blue sea called the Mediterranean. There he saw many wonders that the Northmen had never heard of at home. There was a great sea battle with strange dark-skinned men in ships almost as good as the ships of the Vikings. There were cities of fine stone buildings, and there were strange, delicious fruits to eat. The sky was nearly always blue, not gray as it so often was in the North. Even in winter the weather was warm.

West-over-seas toward America

Now we must leave the Northland farm. You have seen what the people ate, what they wore, and what kind of houses they lived in. You have seen the kinds of good time they enjoyed. You know that they loved adventure and went on long trips by sea. Now you are going to learn about some of the longest voyages the Viking ships ever made, and about some of the greatest adventures of the Northmen.

The Vikings sail west

About the year 800, Vikings began going to the Faeroes, a group of small islands far to the west. You can find them on the map on page 157.

Other men, too, told about voyages they had made and strange places they had seen. The Northmen did not make maps. If they had made a map to show their trips, it would have looked like the one on page 156 of your book.

The party went on for several days. There were games and sports and songs, and every night there was a great feast. When at last it was time to go home, Grandfather gave everyone a present. Some presents were much more valuable than others. The man who sat in the seat across from Grandfather got a gold-handled knife. His wife got a soft scarf to wear over her head. The poor fisherman from down the inlet got a few fishhooks the blacksmith had made. His wife got a piece of coarse brown woolen cloth. No one thought Grandfather was impolite because he did not treat everyone alike. No one expected everyone to be treated alike.

One summer a ship was on its way to the Faeroes. A great storm came up, and the strong winds blew the little ship out of its course. It missed the Faeroes and went on to the northwest. After a time the ship came to a large island. When the crew returned to Norway, they told about this island. They said it was a pleasant place, with grassy lowlands and snow-covered mountains. A few years later a Viking named Floki sailed his ship to the island. He did not agree that it was a pleasant place. He spent a winter there with his crew. When he got back to Norway in the spring, he called the island Iceland. The name shows what he thought of it.

At first no Northmen went to live in Iceland. Then two Viking leaders had a quarrel with the king of Norway. They thought they had better move away. Having heard the stories about Iceland, they went to look at the island for themselves. After staying through a winter, both of them decided that it would be a good place to live.

The two Vikings went back to Norway. They loaded their families and everything they owned into two ships. They planned to start two settlements in Iceland. Each of the leaders was to choose his own place. There is a very interesting story about one of them, whose name was Ingolf.

Ingolf had on his ship two carved wooden posts he had brought from Norway. There they had stood in front of his chair in the great hall of his farmhouse. When Ingolf saw the coast of Iceland, he threw the posts into the water. He said he would start his settlement wherever they drifted ashore.

Late in the summer Ingolf landed and prepared to spend the winter. His men built huts for their families and the animals they had brought. In the spring the Vikings started out to look for the carved posts. They did not find them that year, but they found two large houses built by their friends from the other ship. Nearly everyone in the settlement had died.

Ingolf and his family decided to spend the winter in the two houses. The next spring they started on again, looking for the posts. At last they found them. The two pieces of wood had floated into a beautiful bay near the southwestern corner of the island.

Ingolf laid out his farm beside the bay. He was sure his carved posts had led him to a good place. He called his new home Reykjavik. More settlers came to live beside the bay. Ships came there to trade. Reykjavik grew until it became a town. It is still there, the largest town in Iceland. Many settlers moved from Norway to Iceland. For sixty years there was good land for anyone who wanted it. Many Viking ships sailed back and forth between Iceland and Norway. Red sails, blue sails, green sails, brown sails, yellow sails, and striped sails followed the long sea road from Norway to Iceland. Oars flashed over sunny blue water or struggled with great gray waves under stormy skies.

The Vikings guided their ships by the sun and the stars. Most of the ships that started for Iceland arrived there safely in a few days, even when the winds were wrong and the men had to row all the way. But now and then even the Vikings lost their way. When they could not see the sun and the stars, they did not know where they were.



Some of the most interesting discoveries of the Northmen were made because their ships had lost their way in storms and fog. Of course, as you have just read, Iceland itself was found by Vikings who missed the Faeroes in a storm.

A poor land with a good name

Not many years after the first settlers came to Iceland, a ship was on its way to the island. A storm came up, and there was a high wind from the east. The ship was blown past Iceland. When the storm was over, the ship came back to Iceland. The crew told about seeing land to the west.

People remembered the stories, but for a long time no one went to look at the land. Then a young man named Eric came to Iceland. People called him Eric the Red. Eric decided to sail west and find out whether there really was land there. He found the land, but he could not bring his ship to shore because the ocean was filled with ice. Sailing southward, he rounded a point of land. Beyond this point, the land ran to the northwest.

On the western side of this new island there was less ice. Eric was able to land. Deep inlets cut into the shore. Along these inlets there were grassy meadows and even clumps of small trees. Away from the coast the land was covered with snow and ice.

Winter was coming. Eric and his crew built huts on the shore for the winter. In the spring they sailed on to the north. For two summers they explored the coast and its many inlets. For two more winters they lived in this cold land. Eric decided that Northmen could make their homes here.

Eric sailed back to Iceland. He praised the land he had explored and gave it the name Greenland. He told a friend that settlers would be more likely to come if the land had a good name. We know, of course, that it is more a white land—white with snow—than a green land. You can find Greenland on the map on page 156.

Eric took his family to Greenland. He chose land for a farm and built houses. During the first summer fourteen ships came. They brought men and women and children. The people had cattle and sheep and horses with them. They brought furniture and tools. The settlers built their homes around two inlets in Greenland. Their farms prospered, and more people came.

Northmen discover America

Now comes the story of another lost ship. It was the ship of a young trader named Bjarni. Bjarni's home was in Iceland. He was in the habit of going on long voyages, but he came back every second year to spend the winter with his parents in Iceland. During the year 986 Bjarni came to Iceland. His parents were gone. The neighbors told him that his father and mother had gone to Eric's settlement in Greenland.

Bjarni decided to go to Greenland to find his parents. He knew very little about Greenland, but he had heard that it was somewhere to the west of Iceland. He had heard that it was a land of mountains and ice, where no forests grew. Knowing only this, Bjarni set out to find his family. What more did a Viking need to know?

As Bjarni sailed westward, a great storm came up. Fog covered the ocean

and strong winds blew from the north. Bjarni and his crew were lost for days. When the sun came out again, they could tell directions, but they did not know whether or not they had passed Greenland. They sailed on westward. In less than a day, they sighted land.

Bjarni knew this land was not Greenland. There were low hills, covered with forests. His crew wished to land, but Bjarni would not let them. It was late in the season and Bjarni wanted to find his parents before winter came.

The little ship sailed on toward the northeast. Several times the Northmen sighted land, but each time it did not look like Greenland. Bjarni sailed on. Then he saw a coast that looked just as he expected Greenland to look. He had happened to sight Greenland very near Eric's settlement. That same day he found his parents and their new home.

We know now that Bjarni had discovered America, though he never stepped on its shores. He was not at all interested in the land he had found. So far as we know, he never went back. He did talk about it in Greenland, however.

Eric the Red had a son named Leif. According to the Northmen's way of naming, he was called Leif Ericson. We

know him better by his nickname, Leif the Lucky. Leif had been on a long visit to Norway. When he came back, he heard the stories of Bjarni and his men.

About the year 1000 Leif decided to go and see for himself what this land was like. He hired a crew of thirty-five men and sailed westward. Very soon they came to land. Then they followed the coast toward the south, stopping to explore in several places. They sailed far enough south to find a land where grapes were growing. Leif named the place Vineland, because of the grapevines. He decided to stay all winter; so he and his crew built huts and made themselves comfortable.

We know that other Northmen visited America during the next few years. Then, about the year 1020, three ships set out from Greenland. They carried settlers who expected to live in Vineland. Their leader was Thorfinn Karlsefni, already a famous seaman. The settlers had cattle with them in their ships. Winter came, and the Northmen camped on the shore. During the winter a baby was born and was named Snorri. His father was Karlsefni, the leader of the Northmen. Snorri was the first European baby born in America.

In the spring the Northmen sailed south to a warmer land. There they found a place for a settlement. At first they saw no people, but they saw huts that must have been built by people. Then one day in the fall nine canoes appeared, filled with people who we know must have been Indians. The Indians seemed friendly but easily frightened. They soon paddled away.

The next spring more Indians came. They brought furs, which they were





In the spring more Indians came

willing to trade to the Northmen. Of all the things the Northmen offered the Indians in trade, they liked best milk to drink and strips of red cloth to tie around their heads.

Everything seemed to be going well with the settlers. They had found a pleasant place to live in. The Indians were friendly and willing to trade. Then Karlsefni's bull came strolling out of the woods one day. The Indians had never seen cattle. They thought such a large animal must be very dangerous, and they ran away, terrified. After that they were not so friendly, but they still came to trade.

Then something happened that was even worse. All along, the Indians had wanted to trade furs for some of the Northmen's weapons. Karlsefni would not let them have any. Then one day an Indian tried to steal the weapons of one of the settlers. The Northman saw him and killed him. The Indians left,

but Karlsefni knew that the settlement would not be safe from then on. He had his men build a strong stockade of logs around the houses.

A great many Indians came and fought a battle with the settlers. The Northmen won, but still they decided to leave. They would never be safe here, now that the Indians were their enemies. They went back to Greenland. Little Snorri went with them, of course. When he grew up, he lived in Iceland, and he probably did not remember the far-away land where he had been born.

Other Northmen sailed to America, but we do not know much about them. For several hundred years ships crossed from Greenland to northern North America to get wood. Then in time the Greenland settlements, too, disappeared.

Our story goes back to Europe now. We shall see what people were doing there while the Vikings were adventuring west-over-seas toward America.

The History Workshop

The Northmen lived far, far north of all the other peoples you have learned about. In some ways these Northmen lived differently from peoples in other lands. You probably noticed, however, some ways in which they were similar to other peoples you have read about. The following games and other things to do will help you to remember many things you learned about the Northmen and their adventurous warriors, the Vikings.

A make-believe Viking

Are you good at pretending? Can you imagine yourself as a Viking, living many, many years ago? Pretend that you are a young man, old enough to go on a Viking journey. You have just returned from your first sea voyage. If you let your imagination get to work and, of course, if you remember at least a part of what you have just read, you will be able to answer the following questions about yourself.

1. How long have you been gone from home?
2. Where did you go on your sea voyage?
3. What things did you bring home?
4. Did you trade for goods? Or did you sometimes just take them from other people or fight other people in order to take their precious things?
5. Why could your ship go faster than the ships of other peoples?
6. When the people in far-away lands saw your ship sailing toward them, how did they know whether you were going to attack them or trade with them?

Something to draw

How would you like to make a colored drawing of a Viking ship? You will have to remember what you read and also use your imagination as you draw and color your

ship. Do you remember what color most Vikings like best? You can use much of this color on the shields on the ship. What colors will you use on the sails of the ship?

When each one has drawn his Viking ship, pin your pictures on the wall. When all the pictures are pinned up, you will have a fleet of ships. They will all be a little different from one another, just as the real Viking ships once were.

Choosing the correct word

Below are some sentences for you to complete. Choose the correct word from the parentheses to make the sentence right.

1. Most of the Northmen were (weavers, traders, farmers).
2. The Northmen (did, did not) make things as beautiful as those the Vikings brought back from other lands.
3. (Maps, Storms, Wars) usually led the Vikings to discover new lands.
4. Today we (do, do not) know exactly where the Vikings landed in our country.
5. The (Huns, Phoenicians, barbarians) were other early people who were known as great sailors of their time.

Something to compare

Compare your own home with the home of a Viking. Compare the size, the number of people living there, and the kind of furniture used. If you wish, you may read pages 155 and 158-160 again to help you.

Books to read

Here are some books to tell you more about the great sea rovers, the Vikings. *Leif the Lucky*, by I. M. d'Aulaire and E. P. d'Aulaire; *Coming of the Dragon Ships*, by Florence M. Everson and Howard Everson; *Viking Tales*, by Jennie Hall; and *Leif and Thorkel*, by Genevra S. Snedden.

Traders, Travelers, and Crusaders





Traders, Travelers, and Crusaders

Traveling by Road and by Ship toward the East

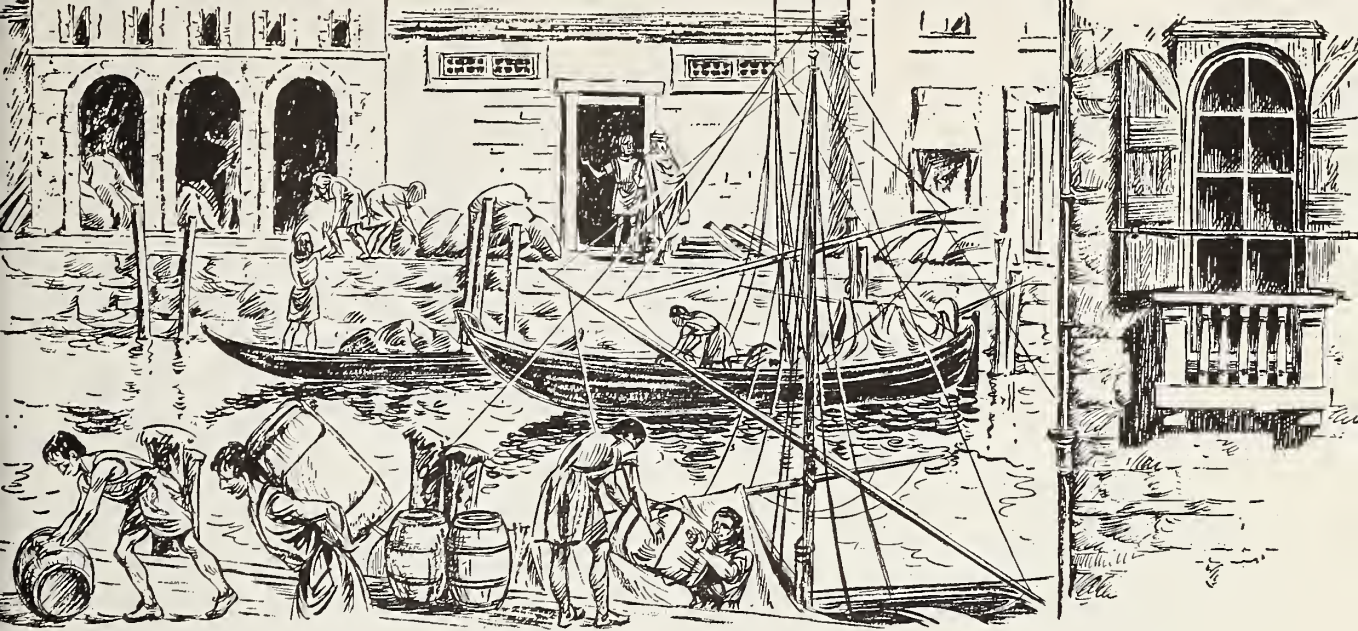
Now for a time you will leave the people of western Europe on their manors and in their castles. You will leave the long ships of the Vikings and the new lands they discovered by sailing west-over-seas.

You are joining a group of travelers. Long ago, people always traveled in groups if possible. One or two people alone would have been in danger from robbers and even from wild animals. The slow journeys were less lonely, too, when many people traveled together.

You are traveling southward along a road in France. Long, long ago this

was a paved Roman road. Here and there you still see bits of the old pavement. Most of the way the road is only a wide, rough path. For miles it winds through dense forests. Then you look out over a manor with peasant farmers at work. Soon you see in the distance a small town. Before you reach the town, the road becomes a little better. Peasants join you, walking beside their creaking carts. The carts are loaded with vegetables, fruits, and grain to sell in the town.

Traveling with you are a knight and some of his followers. They are all on



horseback and wear armor. Several monks in your group are riding mules. Two young men are walking to a city where they will study to be priests.

Last of all comes a group of traders. The richer ones ride horses. The poorer ones are walking. They lead a long line of horses with packs on their backs.

Slowly you travel on, day after day. Finally the knight and his followers ride away toward a great stone castle on a hill. You leave France and come to Italy. You turn toward Venice, while the monks ride away toward Rome. The two students leave you too. Only the traders go on with you.

At last you reach Venice, the greatest seaport of that time. There the traders will sell their goods to other traders. They will buy goods brought from countries farther east by Venetian ships. After resting for a few days, the traders will load their pack horses with these goods and start back to France.

One trader does not go back. He is going on a ship to Constantinople, and you will go with him. The ship on

which you sail is slow and clumsy compared with the Viking ships, but it carries a much larger cargo. On the voyage you pass slender, graceful ships almost as swift as the Viking ships. Do you remember the story Grandfather told at the Viking feast? He told of a sea battle with dark-skinned people in fine ships. These are the same kind of people and ships. The merchant says these people are Arabs.

At last you come to the splendid city of Constantinople. Do you remember how the Roman Empire was divided? The Roman Empire of the East went on for a thousand years after the Empire of the West had been conquered. In Constantinople you see the beautiful marble palace of the emperor. On the walls of his palace hang fine tapestries, and on his table are cups of silver and plates of gold. Here and there in the city you catch glimpses of beautiful churches with large domes and windows of colored glass.

At the time of your make-believe visit to the old city of Constantinople, the



Roman Empire of the East was much smaller than it had been earlier. Only the land around Constantinople, part of Asia Minor, and Greece were left. Asia Minor is the part of Asia south of Constantinople. The Arabs had conquered the rest of the old empire.

Who were the Arabs?

Who were these Arabs? Their home was a land far to the south and east of Constantinople. To reach it, you would have to cross Asia Minor and the Holy Land. Then you would come to a

A Map Showing Busy Trading Countries

The map on the opposite page shows you the places you will want to find as you read about the coming and going of the people who lived in western Europe and along or near the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. Two cities, Venice and Genoa, were great trading centers. To the east was Constantinople. You will want to locate Mecca,

the holy city of the Moslems, and Jerusalem, the holy city of the Christians.

Crusaders, pilgrims, and traders brought back stories about the places they had visited and those they had heard about. In this way knowledge spread and men were eager to visit cities and countries still farther away from the lands they knew.

great stretch of desert. This is Arabia, the home of the Arabs.

The Arabs had been living in their desert land for a long, long time. They were there during the great days of ancient Egypt and Babylonia. They were there when Christ lived in Palestine. They were there while the Roman Empire was growing great and when it was overthrown.

During these many, many years, living changed little for the Arabs. Most of them lived by herding flocks of sheep and goats. Some had farms in the oases. Others were traders who carried goods across the desert on the backs of camels and donkeys. The Arabs lived in tribes, each with its own chief. They believed in many gods. One of their gods was called Allah.

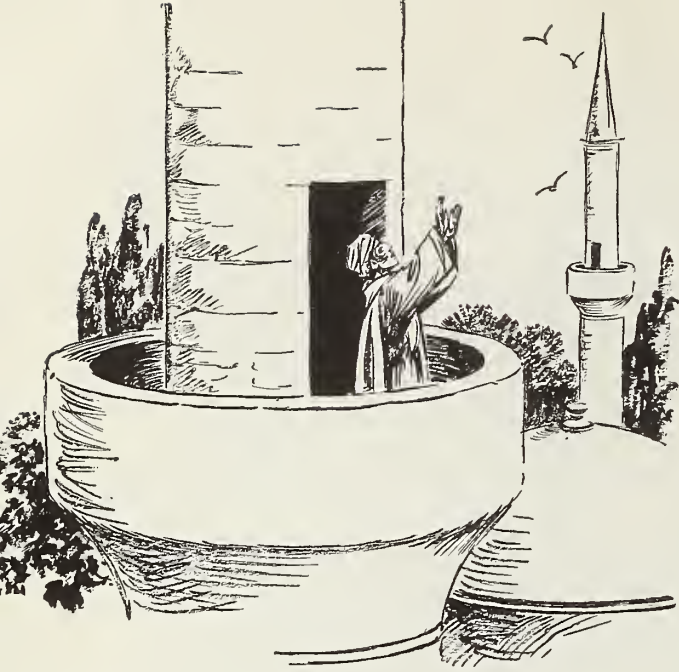
About six hundred years after the birth of Christ, while the little kingdoms were growing up in western Europe, a great leader lived among the Arabs. His name was Mohammed. Because of his teachings, many changes came into the lives of his own people and of people in far-away places.

Mohammed was born in a little town called Mecca. When he grew up, he made long journeys over the desert with

caravans that were carrying goods from place to place. This gave him time to think about the things he heard and saw. Mohammed believed that all the Arab tribes should be united under one god and one leader. He decided to unite the tribes and be their leader.

He told his Arab friends that a messenger of Allah had appeared to him in a dream and had commanded him to teach a new religion. Mohammed taught that there was no god but Allah, and that Allah was the same as the God of the Hebrews and Christians. Because he believed that Christ was a great religious teacher, Mohammed taught his followers to be friendly to the Christians. Some of his friends laughed at him, but others believed all he told them. After a time many Arabs believed in the teachings of Mohammed. The followers of Mohammed were called Moslems.

The Moslems built temples, called mosques, where they went daily to pray. A Moslem was chosen to be a crier, or muezzin, who sang out the time for prayer. If any good Moslem was too far from a mosque to go there for prayer, he prayed anyway, wherever he might be. In the street, in a shop,



in his home, or in the pastures with his flocks, when he heard the call of the muezzin he turned his face in the direction of Mecca. He bowed low to Allah and prayed.

After the death of Mohammed, in 632 A.D., an officer called a caliph became the leader of the Moslems. Other caliphs followed the first one. They wanted new and better lands for the Arabs. And they wanted other people to become Moslems. They led some of the Arab tribes out of the desert to conquer lands, to extend trade, and to make Moslems of the people they met.

Under the leadership of Mohammed the Moslems got on well with the Christians and respected their religion. With the caliphs as leaders, however, the Moslems began to force people to become Moslems. Sometimes they killed those who refused to give up their religion for the teachings of Mohammed. The Moslem armies went to the East and conquered most of the lands that had once belonged to Alexander's em-

pire. As you have seen, they conquered much of the land that belonged to the Roman Empire of the East.

The Arabs really believed that they were serving Allah in conquering other people. They really thought that they were spreading the only true religion over the earth. Their wars were called Holy Wars because they were all fought to spread their religion. Many, many people who were not Arabs became followers of Mohammed. They fought in the Holy Wars. The armies were no longer made up entirely of Arabs, but the fighters were all Moslems.

Thus the Moslems conquered many lands. They carried trade into far-away countries and spread their ideas wherever they went. Among the lands they conquered was Palestine. They captured the city of Jerusalem, the chief city of Palestine.

When Christians of Europe learned that the Moslems had taken Jerusalem, they were unhappy. They had always thought of Jerusalem as the Holy City because Christ had taught there. Many Christians went to the Holy Land from Europe. They traveled the long, hard, dangerous roads to see the places where Christ had lived and taught.

For a long time the Moslems did not try to keep the Christians of Europe from coming to the Holy Land, because they were glad to trade with them. They welcomed traders from Venice and other Italian cities, no matter what their religion might be. You will find, however, that a time came when the Moslems were no longer as kind to the Christians as they had been. But first you need to go back and see what was happening in western Europe.

The Moslems Carry Ideas to Western Europe

One of the first lands conquered by the Moslems was Egypt. From Egypt the Moslem armies fought their way westward across North Africa. After they had conquered all of North Africa, a Moslem army crossed the narrow waters of the Strait of Gibraltar. The Moslems went into Spain and conquered it. Then they turned northward toward France. They built homes and beautiful mosques in the lands they had conquered.

As the Arabs moved into the lands of Europe, the kings and lords and nobles of Europe were fighting among themselves. They fought, too, for the very same reason that their fathers and their grandfathers had fought—to take and to hold lands.

The coming of the Moslems frightened the kings and their lords. They stopped fighting among themselves and fought to drive out the strange men from the desert. At a little town in France they defeated the Moslems and stopped them from coming into the central part of Europe. This happened exactly one hundred years after the death of Mohammed.

The Moslem conquerors ruled Spain for hundreds of years. Some of them were Arabs and some were people of North Africa. The people of Europe called them all Moors.

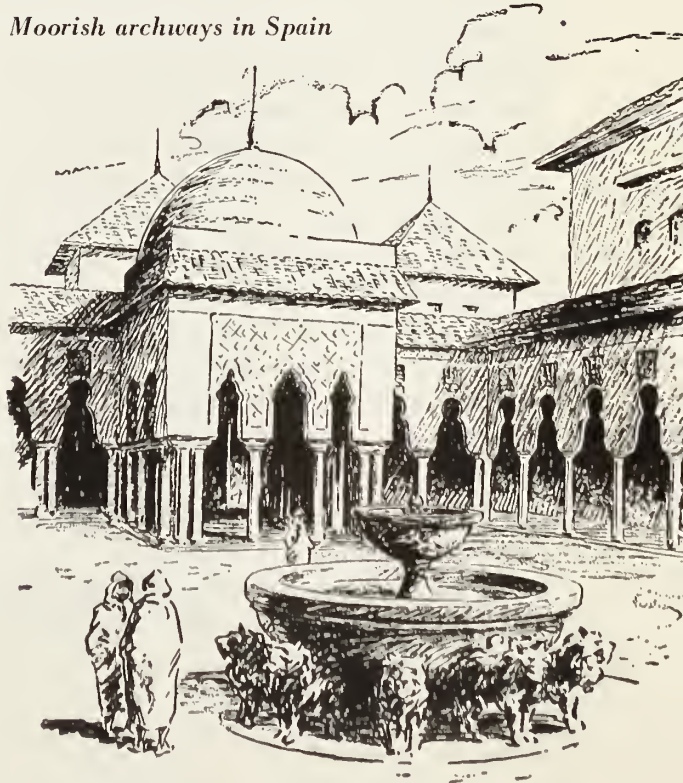
When the Arabs conquered the lands of the Roman Empire in the East, they found many books written by the ancient Greeks and Romans. The wise men among the Arabs could read these. Wherever the Arabs went, they learned much from the people they conquered.

They worked out new ideas of their own. The Arabs had very skillful workmen who made many beautiful and useful things. As they moved to new lands, they carried their ideas and their ways of living with them.

The Moors carried the new ideas into Spain. There they built interesting buildings which were quite different from those that had been built in Europe before. Some of the buildings that were built by the Arabs are standing to this day. Old as these buildings are, they are still beautiful. They have huge domes and lovely spires or minarets and arched doorways decorated with fine carving. The floors of the buildings are made of tiny bits of marble of many colors, skillfully set together to form beautiful patterns.

The Arabs had learned also to write numbers by the use of the figures 1, 2,

Moorish archways in Spain



3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 0. But the people of western Europe were still using the Roman numbers. The Romans used letters to express numbers. Perhaps you know what numbers the Roman letters stand for: I stands for 1; V for 5; X for 10; L for 50; C for 100; D for 500; M for 1000.

The people of Europe did not begin to use the figures as soon as they heard of them. In those days people changed their ways of doing things very slowly. Merchants and traders were the first to use the new figures, which they called *Arabic* numbers. We still use them. You may be glad of that because you would find it very difficult to work your

arithmetic problems with Roman letters instead of Arabic numbers. Business men would find it difficult to keep their accounts that way.

As you have seen, the Arabs brought a few new ideas to the people of western Europe. But they did not greatly change ways of living there, except in Spain. The lords and ladies and the peasants on the manors went on living as if there were no Moslems in Spain. They were separated from these Moslems by the mountains of northern Spain. Other Moslems did bring changes to the people of western Europe. But the cause for these changes was in a land far away from Spain.

Pilgrimages and Crusades to the Holy Land

You remember that the Christians of Europe had been unhappy for a long time because the Holy Land was held by people who were not Christians. For many years the Church had encouraged lords and nobles and other people, too, to make journeys, or pilgrimages, to the Holy Land. Thus they might see for themselves what was happening there.

The people who made such journeys, or pilgrimages, were known as pilgrims. Some rode horses. Others walked all the way. The pilgrims wore long gray robes and wide hats. They carried staffs and bags of food and bottles of water. Sometimes very faithful pilgrims walked with their feet bare and made themselves uncomfortable in other ways. They did this so that everyone might see how willing they were to suffer for their religion.

Great numbers of such pilgrims usually traveled together. They made the

long and dangerous pilgrimages seem shorter and pleasanter by telling stories along the way. Sometimes they paid for their food and beds by entertaining innkeepers with exciting tales of their adventures. People were kinder to pilgrims than they were to ordinary travelers. Traders often joined the pilgrimages so that they might have better protection.

Sometimes robbers, dressed as pilgrims, went along on the journeys. They would attack the other travelers and steal everything they had that was of value. Many pilgrims never reached the Holy Land. Many of them never returned from the Holy Land. Those who did return told exciting stories.

They told what they had seen in the Holy City. They brought back palm leaves and water from the river Jordan, on whose shores Christ had walked. They brought sand and shells from the



Pilgrims to the Holy Land

coast of Palestine and stones from the hill where Christ had died on the cross. Christians who saw such souvenirs and heard the tales of the Holy Land wanted to go there, too.

At first, you remember, the Moslems were glad to have the Christians come to the Holy Land. Mohammed himself had taught that Christ was a great religious leader, and Christians and Moslems worshiped the same God. As long as the Arabs ruled the Holy Land, Christian pilgrims could go there.

Then people called Turks came from farther east in Asia. They were Moslems, but they were not Arabs. They conquered parts of the great empire the Arabs had built up. They conquered the Holy Land and other lands to the north. The Turks did not want Christians to come to the Holy Land. They were often cruel to those who did come.

The pilgrims who returned to their own land had many stories to tell of the cruelties they had suffered. The stories grew as they spread, as stories

have a way of doing. With every story they heard, the Christians grew more worried and troubled.

After a time the Pope called a meeting of Christians. He told them that Jerusalem must be taken from the Moslems. He asked men to leave their families and join in a great army which should march on the Holy City and capture it. It was the duty of every Christian, he said, to take part in this noble and brave adventure. All who took part would be happier for the rest of their lives. Those who died in such a holy war would be sure of a place in heaven. The Christians who heard the Pope's words were filled with new hope and great courage.

Before long, large armies began to gather for the long and dangerous journey to Jerusalem. Rich nobles, brave knights, proud ladies, poor peasants, traders, and even children joined the armies. All who promised to go were given large red crosses to wear on their cloaks or robes. Because they wore



Knights starting on a Crusade

crosses, they were called *crusaders*. The name comes from the Latin word *crux*, which means "cross." The wars the crusaders fought were called Crusades. We still use these names.

During the year 1096 thousands of people streamed eastward across Europe. They were all to meet at Constantinople. Many just started to walk toward the east. They had no plans and made no preparations. Scarcely any of these people reached Constantinople. Three great armies did reach the city, however. Two armies traveled all the way by land. One went part of the way by sea. The armies were made up of knights and trained fighting men. They rode good horses. They wore their best armor and their best clothes.

At the time of the Crusades, the best armor was made of many small metal links, like the links of a chain. They were fastened together in such a way

that they looked almost like cloth made of metal. A knight wore a shirt, with sleeves, made of this chain mail, as it was called. Over this he wore a cloth garment without sleeves.

After a time the armies crossed the narrow strait at Constantinople. They fought their way slowly southward toward Jerusalem. At last, after great hardships and terrible battles, they reached Jerusalem and captured it. The crusaders set up in the Holy Land a country called the Kingdom of Jerusalem. This kingdom lasted almost two hundred years.

During all that time there was fighting in the Holy Land. The crusaders were never again so successful as the first armies. During all those years more and more knights, great lords, and even kings became crusaders. Some of them spent nearly their whole lives fighting to defend the Holy Land.

Not all of the crusaders really cared about keeping the Holy Land for the Christians. Some went for adventure, or in the hope of becoming rich, or because they were unhappy at home. There were some who went only to rob and steal along the way.

The Moslems never gave up trying to take back the Holy Land. In less than a hundred years they had taken back Jerusalem itself. Once, years later, the Christians captured it again, but they did not hold it long.

The Moslems captured the cities of the Holy Land one by one. They captured the great stone castles the crusaders had built. At last everything was lost to the Christians. They had nothing left in the Holy Land, not even a place to fight.

Changes in ways of living

There were changes in ways of living in Europe as a result of the Crusades. Let us see what some of the changes were. You remember that most of the people in Europe were either nobles or poor peasants. A noble had a piece of land, like a large farm, called a manor. The lord lived in a castle or a large house. Near his home was a village of

tiny houses. In this village the poor peasants of his manor lived.

Each peasant had land to use. The lord could not take the land away from the peasant. The peasant could not move away from the manor. He was said to be bound to the land. If he had run away, he would not have been able to find work. Poor as he was, he was safest on the manor. There he had land. He could raise food for his family.

Before the Crusades there was little trade in western Europe. The tradesmen were not much better off than the peasants. They did not have much to sell because there were not many things made to sell. Roads were very bad. Sometimes they were only paths. The tradesmen had to carry goods on pack horses or donkeys. Even the best roads were poor and rough. If a wagon broke down on land belonging to a lord, the lord took part of the load. If a loaded boat was wrecked on the shore near a castle, the lord took part of the goods. Tradesmen had to pay for carrying goods on a river that ran through a lord's land. They had to pay for crossing a bridge on his land.

There were only a few cities in western Europe. The cities were small, and

Tradesman with his pack horse



they were poor and dull and dirty. Most cities were on land that the king had given to the great lords. The lords could make the city people pay heavily for using the land.

The Crusades helped trade to increase in Europe. They helped the cities to grow. This gave many peasants a chance to get away from the manors.

Some of the lords who went on Crusades never returned to their manors. Sometimes those manors were taken over by the Church, sometimes by other lords. The peasants who had been bound to the manors were expected to work for the new lords, but they did not always do that. Instead, many of them went to cities or towns where trade was growing. There they tried to find work. If they could manage to stay free for a year and a day, they would be free forever.

Even before the Crusades there were merchants in Venice and other cities of Italy. Many crusaders traveled by ship from the Italian cities to the Holy Land. They traded with Italian merchants. They paid to ride on Italian ships. The merchants built more ships to carry them. The Italian merchants also traded in the Holy Land. They bought goods that had come from farther to the east. By the end of the Crusades the Italian cities had grown. They were the homes of many rich and busy merchants.

In the East the crusaders saw many strange and wonderful things they had never heard of. They saw marble buildings, paved streets, good roads, bridges, schools, libraries, theaters, public baths. They met people who could read and write and keep account of their

business. They met people who had new ideas about building, about making things, and about farming and caring for flocks.

Naturally, the crusaders talked about the great trade of the East. They brought home leather, glass, pottery, fine swords, soft rugs and carpets, and many other things from the lands over which they had traveled. They wished they might have more of such things. The crusaders had enjoyed new foods, too, such as rice, apricots, melons, peaches, dates, and asparagus. They wished they might have more of such foods. Many of the crusaders saw for the first time a beautiful new cloth—silk. They were delighted with the softness, the smoothness, and the richness of silk. And of course all who saw the silk wanted it, just as they wanted the other things.

Towns and trade

When people begin to want things, trade is certain to grow. After the first of the Crusades, people began to want many things, and trade began to grow. Sleepy old towns came to life again. Business sprang up in streets which had been overgrown with grass and weeds. New towns began to grow. Some of them even had their beginnings right inside the courtyards of castles. How could a town begin to grow in a courtyard? Let us see.

Perhaps a castle stood on the seashore or on the bank of a river. Merchants who brought goods to such a castle stayed within the safety of the walls. While they were at the castle, they showed all the goods they had brought. They told of fine goods of

this kind or that which could be had here or there. The lords and ladies of the castle listened. Of course they wanted the new and different things. The merchants at once made plans to return to the castle. Trade grew.

Now and then a poor peasant would do some work for a merchant. He would help to unload a boat or to carry goods to the castle. The merchant would give him something for his work. It might be a piece of cloth, a pan for the hearth, a basket, or perhaps a bit of jewelry. The peasant would be delighted with the gift and so would his wife. They wanted more. Trade grew.

The courtyards of such castles were soon full of people. As more people came, more things were needed. As more things were needed, more people were set to work in the courtyard or near the castle. They made cloth, shoes, wagons, carts, furniture, boats, armor,

and all sorts of other things. Peasants began to do more and more work for the merchants because they were sure to be paid in one way or another.

News spread even in those days. Other peasants heard of the work that was being done on some busy manor. They left the lords whom they had promised to serve and ran away to those manors where trade was growing, where new things were being made. By and by a town had grown up.

Most towns had walls around them, whether or not they had been started in the courtyard of a castle. The people of the towns needed these walls for protection. The walls had watch towers and great gates that could be closed at night. Guards were chosen to keep watch at the towers and gates.

The walls kept the people safe, but they also kept the cities from spreading out. The people of a city sometimes

The streets were narrow



built new walls, surrounding more land. But new walls were expensive to build. As more people came to a town, they were likely just to crowd closer together within the old walls.

To save space, buildings were set wall to wall and as close to the streets as possible. In some of those old towns, streets became so narrow that two carts could not pass each other. To save space, people began to build taller buildings, four or five stories high. To get more use of the space, people made the upper stories of buildings much wider than the lower stories. Sometimes the upper stories on opposite sides of a street almost met above the street.

To make the best use of their buildings, people lived in their shops or worked in their homes. You may think of it either way. Since few people could read, shopkeepers or people who made things used pictures to show what they had for sale. Thus a shoemaker had a picture of a shoe over his door. A wine seller had a picture of a jar of wine or of grapevines.

Do you get a good idea of the strangeness and quaintness of these old towns?

There was one unpleasant thing about them which you must also bring into your picture. They were dirty. Men who herded flocks brought their animals within the safety of the walls when night came. People tossed waste of all kinds into the streets, and pigs ran around eating the waste. There was little water. There was no drainage. Of course, because these old towns were so dirty and so crowded, there was always much sickness within their walls.

Fire was always a danger in crowded towns. It spread quickly in buildings set wall to wall along narrow streets, and there were no good ways to stop it. To lessen the danger, people covered their home fires every night. And to make sure that everyone remembered to do this a watchman went around at eight o'clock every night ringing a bell as a reminder. The reminder came to be known as the curfew. The word comes from two French words, *couvre feu*, meaning "cover fire."

Some of those old, old towns are still standing. Americans like to visit them because they are so quaint and so different from towns in this country.

Growth of Crafts and Trade under the Guilds

At first the lords and nobles ruled the towns. Many of them did not treat the people fairly. They were greedy and thought only about themselves and their gains. They did not care what happened in the town or to the people.

In time, merchants began to make complaints against the lords of the towns. They held meetings to talk over their complaints. One would tell that he had been robbed in the street or on the

road and the lord had not sent soldiers to help him. Another would tell that his cart had broken down and the lord had taken all his goods. Another would tell that the lord had not repaired a bad road, as he had promised to do.

The guilds

After many such meetings, the merchants decided that they would have to work together for their own good. They

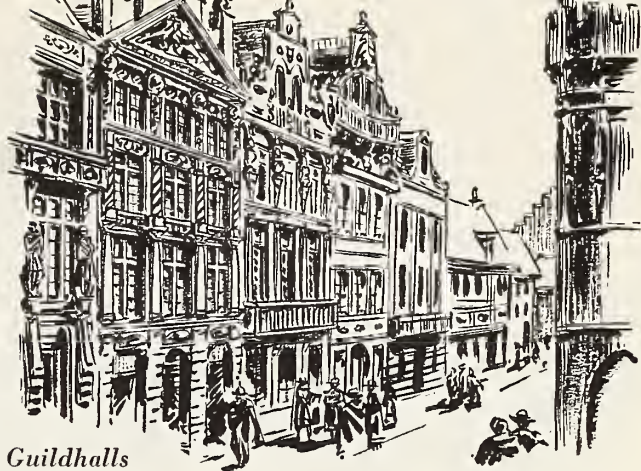
formed themselves into groups, called *merchant guilds*. As years went by, many guilds were formed. The guilds built large halls, called merchants' halls or guildhalls, and helped build beautiful churches. They lent money to the towns. They helped the people to make their own laws and to choose their own rulers. The guilds helped their members when there was sickness in their families or trouble of any kind. They made rules about weights and measures and rules that forced everyone to deal fairly and honestly.

Men who made things also formed guilds, known as *craft guilds*. The name was chosen because each kind of work was called a craft. Bakers, tanners, carpenters, shoemakers, blacksmiths, hatters, glovers, jewelers, and other workers belonged to craft guilds and were called *craftsmen*.

Craftsmen had strict rules. No member of the guild was allowed to sell anything which was not well made. Anything poorly made was destroyed, and the maker was punished. No craftsman was allowed to neglect his family. No craftsman was allowed to work on Sundays and holidays or at night.

Usually the craftsman had his shop in the first story of his house. Here he and the members of his family and others worked together. The living room, dining room, and kitchen were on the second floor, sleeping rooms on the third floor. On the fourth and fifth floors were storerooms where various materials were kept.

To become a craftsman, a boy or a young man had to work with a *master* craftsman as a learner, or an *apprentice*. When an apprentice had learned a craft,



Guildhalls

he might leave the master and work where he pleased for wages. Then he was called a *journeyman*. If he did his work well and improved as he worked, he might become a master. The story which follows will give you a good idea of how a boy became a master craftsman.

From apprentice to master craftsman

Once upon a time, many hundreds of years ago, there lived a boy whose name was Dick. He was the son of a poor peasant who was in the service of the lord of a great manor.

When Dick was about six years old, his father went on a Crusade with the lord. He hadn't wanted to go. But the lord of the manor ordered him to, and he had no choice in the matter. While his father was gone, Dick's mother worked as a servant in the castle.

Several years went by. They were hard and unhappy years. Then one day Dick's father came home again. The lord had decided to stay in Jerusalem, so Dick's father was free unless the new lord of the manor should want him.

Dick's father didn't wait to find out whether he was wanted or not. He had seen enough of the world to know

what it is to be free. He decided to take his family and go to the nearest city. There he found work, and there he stayed for a year and a day. Then he was really free.

One day he said to Dick, "Son, you are now eleven years old. It is time that you learn to do something. Why don't you become an apprentice to a good cabinet maker? Cabinet making is a fine craft because good furniture is always needed. I know a master craftsman, and I think he will take you. He needs a good boy."

Dick was pleased with the idea. The very next day he went with his father to the shop of the master cabinet maker. He agreed to work for the master for seven years. During that time the master was to teach him. Thus Dick became an apprentice. He felt very proud because he was going to take care of himself. He would get food, clothing, and a place to sleep in return for the work he did.

At first, being an apprentice seemed rather dull to Dick. He had to help the master's wife with the housework. He had to sweep the shop, run errands, and do many unpleasant things. That was not so good. Yet Dick knew that he was only beginning his work.



Little by little the master taught Dick about different kinds of wood. He showed him what kind of wood was best for this and what was best for that. He taught the boy the use of each tool and how to care for tools. By and by the master showed Dick how to cut out different pieces of wood, and how to fit them together. A year went by and another and then another, and all the time Dick was learning. Since there were not many different tools with which to work, all craftsmen had to learn to be very skillful with the tools they had, and with their hands.

When the seven years were up, Dick knew how to make a cabinet, a chest, a chair, a stool. He knew how to put fine woodwork in a room. He knew many other things besides. Still, he was not so skillful as the master was. He needed more practice and he would get that as a journeyman.

All this time Dick got nothing for his work except food, clothing, and a place to sleep. You may think that he was poorly paid, but he did not think so. He knew that he was learning something useful by which he could make his own living. There were no schools in those days for poor boys like Dick.

At a fair one day he met a cabinet maker from another town. This man was badly in need of workmen, and he promised to pay well. Dick agreed to work for him, and so he had his first chance to earn money. He practiced what he had been taught, and once in a while he tried out some ideas of his own. He carved new designs on the backs of chairs and on the sides and covers of chests. He liked especially to carve fruits, birds, and flowers.



Dick learns to be a cabinet maker

After working several years as a journeyman, Dick went back to the master craftsman who had taught him. He wanted to show his work. If the master said, "Good!" Dick would know that his work was really good.

The master did say, "Good!" And he did more. He called a meeting of the guild of cabinet makers to which he belonged. He showed them Dick's work. And they, too, said, "Good!" Then they gave Dick an examination and were well pleased with what he knew. They asked him to repeat all the vows of the guild. One important vow was that he would always do honest work. Another was that he would give away no secrets of the guild. And so at last Dick became a master craftsman.

Soon he chose a wife. He found a home for himself and his wife, and no doubt the two lived very happily. One day he said to his wife, "I got a new apprentice today. He is a poor peasant boy whose father has just come back from a Crusade." He had to smile to himself as he said that, because he couldn't help remembering that he had begun to work in that very same way.

Markets and fairs

Market days were very special days in the time when trade was beginning to grow. Two or three times a week merchants and craftsmen met in the market square of the town and sold or traded goods. On such days farmers, too, brought in their produce. The

square would come alive with people, buying, selling, and trading, and often arguing about prices.

Towns that had harbors on the sea or on rivers had great crowds on market days. So also did towns that had large churches or holy places where people might worship. Thousands of pilgrims came to pray in a church or to kneel at the tomb of a saint. In such towns fairs were held once or twice a year.

A fair was like a market, but it was much larger and lasted for several weeks. The fair people enjoyed most was the spring fair. Perhaps this was because the long winter was over and everything was fresh and lovely again.

Our fairs today are patterned after those of long ago. Let's be off to visit one of those old-time fairs and compare it with our own fairs.

A visit to a fair

As we come to the town, we see that the fair is in full swing. From near and far people have come noisily and gaily to enjoy their holiday. Outside the walls of the town a little village of tents and booths has sprung up as if by magic. Here are displayed the goods the merchants and craftsmen and farmers have for sale. They call loudly to all who pass, inviting everyone to come, come, come, and see the treasures.

Great crowds of people wander about, buying, selling, shouting, and laughing. Lords and ladies mingle with peasants and workers. Everyone has forgotten his cares and is making the most of the day. From a little distance can be heard the neighing of horses, the bellowing of cattle, the bleating of sheep.

At the fair



We walk up and down among the booths and tents, taking in all the sights. Here is a tent displaying fine tapestries, wonderfully woven, and rugs soft as wool, dyed in gorgeous colors. In another tent are cloaks and robes. In another are hats and gloves and shoes.

Here are stacks of fine vellum, of which books are made. Here also are the raw hides of sheep and goats, ready for skilled hands to make them into useful things.

Here are booths displaying pottery of many kinds—bowls, dishes, cups, plates. Near by is a booth crowded with religious statues and figures.

We push along with the crowd and suddenly find ourselves at a booth set up by merchants from the East. What delicious odors come from the spices and perfumes! We sniff the air with

delight. On the walls of the booth hang silks, flecked with gold, and rich velvets of purple, red, blue, and other lovely rainbow colors.

We are pushed along by the crowd before we have seen half the things. We come to a booth where salted fish and meats are for sale. The odor from this booth is not so pleasant. We hurry past, and suddenly we are swept into an open space from which come the sharp sounds of horns and trumpets and the hoarse voices of entertainers. A dancing bear is doing funny tricks. A clown is tumbling about, tinkling the bells on his fingers and the bells on his toes. Jugglers whirl colored balls up, up, up into the air.

We watch the entertainers for a while, then we move on slowly, enjoying all the sights. Presently we come



to an odd-looking wagon. It is two stories high. The upper story is open and on it we can see a platform wider than the wagon itself. Around the lower story hang heavy curtains. Behind the curtains actors are putting on their costumes and making ready to give a play. When they are ready, they climb a ladder to the second story, and from the platform they give the play. We stand quietly beside the wagon.

The story of the play is taken from the Bible. As we watch, Joseph and his brothers come to life before our eyes. We cannot understand the language, of course, but luckily we know the story well enough to enjoy it. We notice that

here and there are other two-storied wagons from which other plays are being given.

Music comes sweetly from another part of the fair. We hurry toward it and see that many peasants dressed in their Sunday best are dancing on the green. The music is fast and gay, and the peasants circle swiftly in time to the music. Faster and faster comes the music, and faster and faster the peasants dance. Soon everyone is joining in. We, too. What fun it is! Around and around we go until, out of breath, we sink down on the green grass to rest and to talk about all the strange things we have seen.

The Large Cities of Italy Become Free

As cities grew, they gained more freedom. Merchant guilds were strong and rich enough to free themselves from the lords and nobles. Sometimes they gained freedom for their cities by paying a certain sum of money to the lords each year. Sometimes they bought freedom outright.

In time, cities built their own roads, repaired their own walls, built their own bridges, and kept their own armies for protection. The rulers of the cities were chosen by the people. Thus cities became somewhat like the city-states of ancient Greece.

The cities of Italy became the richest and the most splendid in all Europe. Venice was the finest, the most beautiful of all. It was located on islands in an arm of the sea, where it could carry on a great trade between the East and the West. Its streets were not of cement or stone, but of water.

Imagine yourself in a home in Venice. You wish to visit some of the shops and see their displays. You call for a boat. It comes right to your doorstep and carries you to almost any place in the city that you care to visit.

Other important cities of Italy were Genoa, Pisa, Florence, and Milan. Italian merchants and sailors were known all over Europe. They were also known to the traders of India and China. They founded new trade routes to the East, the greatest of which went the long way of the Mediterranean Sea. They built great warehouses where they stored goods which were finally sent over land and river routes to all parts of western and central Europe.

You remember that the merchants of Venice had built ships to take thousands of crusaders to the East. These ships also carried goods. They brought back velvets, spices, silks, perfumes, and

jewels. All the merchants wanted a part of that rich trade which was growing and growing.

As time passed, trade kept on growing. Tradesmen went farther and farther away from their homes. They had exciting stories to tell when they returned. People everywhere learned a little more about the world.

There were two noblemen of Venice who grew very curious about their world. Their names were Maffeo and Nicolo Polo. They were rich and could have lived comfortably in Venice for the rest of their lives. But they wanted to see strange countries, strange people. They wanted especially to know about the East from which came spices, perfumes, silks, and other fine goods.

About the year 1254 the Polos set out on a journey. They went eastward and after many months reached the old, old country of China, where they stayed for years. They came to know the emperor, who was called the Great Khan.

The Polos were gone from Venice for many years. When they returned, they had many marvelous stories to tell. There was one young man of Venice who listened to those stories with more eagerness than all the rest. He was Marco Polo, the son of Nicolo. Marco was born while his father and uncle were on their way eastward to China.

All the time Marco was growing up he must have been wondering about his father and his uncle. He must have tried to imagine what they were like, when they would come home, what they would have to tell about their adventures. Can you imagine how excited Marco was when he learned that he was to go to China with Nicolo and Maffeo on their next trip?

Marco did go to China. What he had to tell about the strange lands he saw was the cause of more and still more changes in Europe, as you shall see. But first let's visit that ancient land of China.

Young Marco hears stories of China



The History Workshop

While the Vikings were exploring unknown lands west-over-seas, the traders, travelers, and crusaders of Europe found new land and sea routes to another part of the world. The people of Europe learned from these travelers about new peoples and strange cities far to the east across the Mediterranean. Let us see how much you can tell about the traders, travelers, and crusaders, and the new peoples they found.

Something to find

When the Moors conquered new lands, they built many buildings. Their buildings, with huge domes, tall spires, and arched doorways, were very different from those of western Europe. Look back at the pictures in this chapter. How many pictures can you find that show interesting buildings made by the Moors?

Something to do

One of the best things the western Europeans learned from the Arabs was the use of Arabic numbers. The people of western Europe had been using Roman numerals to do their accounts. To see how much easier it is to use Arabic numbers, do a simple arithmetic problem. For example, add the Arabic figures 12 and 13. Now use the Roman numbers, XII and XIII. The answer is XXV. Would you like to do all your arithmetic problems in Roman numerals, as the boys at the time of the Crusades had to do them?

A list to make

The crusaders did not succeed in keeping the Holy Land, but the Crusades brought many changes to the people of Europe. Can you name several of these changes?

The growth of trade will be one of the changes you can list. List some of the fine goods that the people of Europe first saw when the crusaders brought them home.

Something to compare

In the days when trade began to grow again, market days were very important. Even more exciting to people were the fairs, which were really just big market days. Even today there are fairs. Have you ever been to one? If so, compare the fairs today with the early ones. The following questions will help you compare them.

1. How often were fairs held?
2. How many days did they last?
3. Who went to the fairs?
4. What were some of the wares shown?
5. What did people do at the fairs?

A matching game

The six sentences below describe the following six words. Can you match each word with its correct description?

| | | |
|------------|--------|------------|
| crusaders | Arabs | Mohammed |
| apprentice | guilds | journeyman |

1. A great Arab leader whose followers were called Moslems.
2. These people learned to write numbers by use of the figures 1, 2, 3, etc.
3. These people wore red crosses and fought to take Jerusalem from the Moslems.
4. These are clubs formed by the merchants to work together and to protect their work from the lords and nobles.
5. A boy or young man who worked with a master craftsman as a learner.
6. A young man who had learned a craft and left his master to work for wages.

Books to read

These books will tell you more about the traders, travelers, and crusaders of long ago. *A Child's Story of the World*, by Donald C. Peattie. *A Child's History of the World*, by V. M. Hillyer. *Westward Toward America*, by Marion G. Clark and Wilbur F. Gordy.

Traders Discover an Ancient Land to the East





Traders Discover an Ancient Land to the East

Civilization Begins in Chinese River Valleys

China was indeed ancient at the time when Marco Polo visited it. It was older than Marco's home city, Venice. It was older than Rome.

Imagine you are going back to the days of ancient Egypt and Babylonia and that you are traveling far to the east. You cross mountains, deserts, and grass lands that go on and on. At last you come to a great river. You see it first flowing in a narrow valley through mountain country. Then it flows across a wide plain. Most of the plain is covered with grass, but in some parts there are forests and in other parts wet

and swampy places. The earth is slightly yellow in color. The yellow mud in the river makes it look yellow and gives it its name, Yellow River.

At the time when our story begins, wild animals live on the plain—rhinoceroses, wolves, water buffaloes, deer, and even elephants and tigers. The marshes swarm with ducks and other water birds. People live on the plain, too, but there are not many of them. They live by hunting and fishing. They hide from the fiercer animals, but they hunt the deer and birds with bows and arrows and with stone-tipped spears.



Now look at the map on page 195. Follow the Yellow River from high up in the mountains at the left side of the map. Notice where the Yellow River is joined by the Wei River in the central part of China. Chinese civilization began on the plain where these rivers meet. Here hunters learned to farm.

These first farmers of China grew a kind of grain called millet. Their tools were stone axes and hoes with wooden handles. They had stone knives and stones for grinding the grain. Their only tame animals were pigs and dogs. They still hunted for most of their meat and for skins to make into clothing. They did not build houses. They dug round holes in the earth and roofed them over. The holes were about ten feet deep and ten feet across.

We do not know much about these earliest farmers or about how they lived. We think they must have looked much like the people who live in northern China today. These people have light-brown or yellowish-brown skins, dark-brown eyes, and straight black hair.

The people of China still have many stories about the first Chinese. These stories tell how great emperors taught them better ways of living. One story tells of an emperor who taught people to make fire by rubbing two sticks together. Another tells of an emperor who taught them to train animals. Still another tells of an emperor who taught them to build houses. These stories are only myths. The people of China did learn better ways of living, but they learned just as all other early people did. Some things they invented for themselves. But other things they learned from people who lived farther west in Asia and from others who lived farther to the south.

The Chinese people learned to make many kinds of fine pottery. They learned to weave cloth. They kept cattle, sheep, horses, and chickens. After a time they grew not only millet but also other grains, especially wheat and rice. They raised vegetables. They made bronze and used it to make many things. And they learned to write.



How the Early People of China Lived and Worked

Hundreds of years passed. More and more of the hunters learned to farm. All along the valley of the Yellow River where it flows through the plain there were farmers. Many things about their farms will remind you of ancient Egypt and Babylonia. Just as in these other countries, the first civilized people lived

in a great valley. In the valley the land was flat and easy to farm. Water could be brought to the fields from the river. As in Egypt and Babylonia, the first crop was grain. Watch for other ways in which these lands were alike. You will find many ways in which they were different, too.

Two Maps Showing Far-away China

As you read about China you will want to use the map on this page. The great rivers, the Great Wall, and Kublai Khan's city at Peiping are all shown. The map on the opposite page shows you how very far China was from the other countries you have read about. Men like the Polos were always looking for new lands. So they traveled farther and farther east. Follow the Polos on their journey over unknown lands and seas from Venice to China and back again. You can see what a large part of the globe the Polos could tell about when they returned from their long stay in China.



Chinese farmers

The Chinese farmers lived in villages. Some of them still lived in homes dug in the earth. Others lived in caves hollowed out of the sides of cliffs. They did not make houses of brick or stone, but some of them built houses of earth. They placed long pieces of wood on the ground a little way apart. Then they filled the space between with earth and pounded it until it clung together and became solid and hard. They added another layer and another and another, pounding each layer of earth until it was hard. When they took away the pieces of wood, they had a thick solid wall of earth. After they had finished the walls, they put a thatched roof on the house. Such houses could not be built everywhere. Only certain kinds of earth will cling together and make a solid wall.

Around the village were the fields. There the farmers worked with hoes and spades and other simple tools. They did not use plows until later.

Beyond the fields was land used for pasture. There was waste land, too. Some of the waste land was forest, and some was covered with bushes and weeds. Some was wet and marshy.

At first there were only a few farmers in the valleys of the Wei and Yellow rivers. They needed only a little land. Then more people learned to farm, so there came to be more and more farmers. The children of the farmers grew up and wanted land. More and more of the waste land was changed into farm land. Trees were cut down. Weeds and bushes were burned off the land. Ditches were dug to carry away the water from the marshes. Other ditches were dug to bring water to dry lands so that rice could be grown there.

The farmers' fields were very small. There was still plenty of land, but a family could not do all the work on a large farm. The farmers used oxen to pull carts, but they had not yet learned to use plows pulled by oxen. They stirred the soil with a tool called a

foot plow. Two men working together pushed it along with their feet. For hundreds of years the farm tools were simple and crude. They were almost like those of the very first farmers. The farmers worked hard and nearly all the time. Still they could not farm very much land with their simple tools.

The first Chinese towns

Now there were towns in China. The rulers and nobles lived in the towns. Craftsmen and traders lived there, too. All towns looked much the same.

Every town was square. Around it was a thick wall of pounded earth. There were gates in the wall and wooden towers beside the gates. Guards in the towers watched for enemies.

Near the center of the town was a large, low platform of pounded earth. The ruler's house stood on this platform. The houses of other important people were clustered around it. These houses were made of wood. The roofs were of gray tile. Large wooden pillars held up these heavy roofs. The pillars were often painted in bright colors. Red was a favorite color because people thought red brought them good luck. Pictures of tigers and dragons were painted on the walls.

The poorer people of the town lived in houses like the houses of the country people. They were the craftsmen. Some of them were workers in bronze, and others were potters. Some wove cloth of silk or of the fibers of the hemp plant. They wove baskets and matting. Some made furniture, and others carved ornaments of ivory or stone.

Outside the gates of the town there was a market. Farmers brought to the

market grain and vegetables in two-wheeled carts drawn by oxen. They brought sheep, cattle, and pigs to sell. The craftsmen brought the articles they had made.

Ways of living in China at this time were like those in ancient Egypt and Babylonia. They were alike, but they were different, too.

They were different because China was a long, long way from other early civilized countries. Therefore Chinese civilization grew in its own way. Even today people can look at a dish, a piece of embroidery, or a painting and say, "This is Chinese." Chinese people lived in houses that were different from the houses of people we have studied about before. They wore different clothes. They ate different foods. They had an entirely different kind of writing. They had different ideas about religion, and they even had different ideas about how to be polite.

China had not yet become one country. The land was divided up into many small city-states. In each city-state there was a walled town where the ruler lived. Around it were farm lands and villages in which the farmers lived. Often there were walls around part of the farm lands. Sometimes a ruler tried to build walls around the whole city-state. He made hundreds of farmers work on them. The walls were of pounded earth, like the town walls.

There were many wars between the city-states. Every noble was expected to go to war and to take a hundred foot soldiers with him. These soldiers were farmers from his land.

Every noble rode into battle in a chariot drawn by four horses. In each

chariot there were three men. One drove the horses. One fought with a spear. One fought with a bow and arrows. The foot soldiers carried battle axes of bronze. Each leader had a drum and a gong in his chariot. As long as the drum sounded, the soldiers went forward. If the gong sounded, they were to retreat. This was the way the ruler gave orders to the army.

All of the city-states of early China were in or near the valley of the Yellow River. At last an emperor was able to unite these city-states. He made them into one country. Then he sent armies to conquer the barbarians to the south. The barbarians were not very different from the Chinese. They already had some of the Chinese ways of living. In time they all thought of themselves as Chinese.

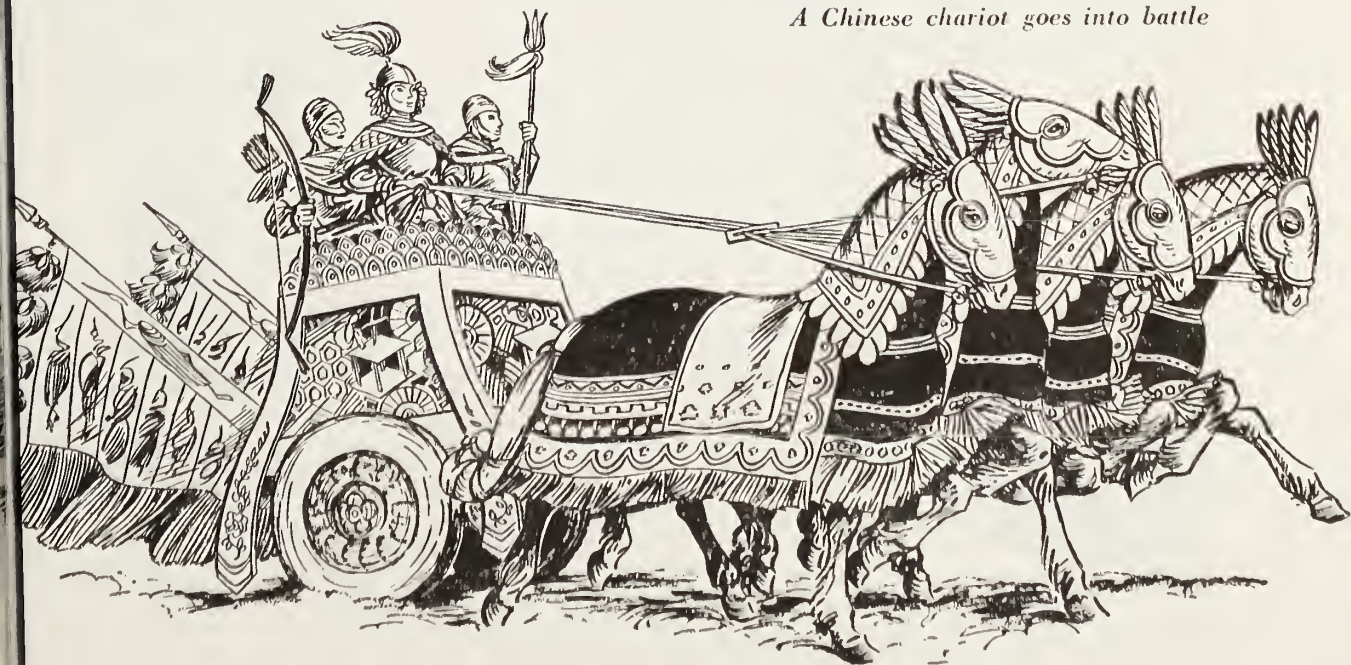
Would you like to know the name of this emperor who united China? His name was Shih Huang Ti. He lived about a hundred years after the time of Alexander. You remember that Alexander built a great empire.

To the north of China there were other barbarians. They were much like the Huns who later tried to conquer Europe. They did not live as did the Chinese. Their land was too dry for farming, and so they were not farmers, but herdsmen. They kept sheep, cattle, and many horses. The herdsmen lived in tents and moved from place to place to find good pasture for their animals. They often raided the farms of northern China in search of good pastures.

Shih Huang Ti did not try to conquer these barbarians. He tried only to keep them out. To do this, he built a great wall of pounded earth. Thousands of men spent many years building this wall. It was fifteen hundred miles long and extended all the way across northern China. Forts and towers were built along the wall.

The Great Wall is still there. It was rebuilt and repaired hundreds of times in later years. Parts of it were later made of stone and brick. As you shall see, the wall did not always keep the barbarians out of China.

A Chinese chariot goes into battle





Working and Playing in the Chinese Empire

You have seen how China became an empire, long, long ago. You have seen how the Chinese people became civilized long, long ago. You know that Chinese ways of living were different from ways of living in Europe. Things the Chinese people made were different from things made in Europe. Just how different were they?

They were not completely different, of course. Chinese people built houses and made clothes. They raised food on farms. They used furniture, dishes, and tools. They painted pictures and carved statues. They did many kinds of work and had many ways of enjoying themselves. In all these ways they were much like the people of Europe. But they were not exactly like them.

The Chinese have a saying that one picture tells more than a thousand words. A picture can tell you more than a thousand words about the differences between China and Europe.

The Chinese at home

Some of the Chinese were rich. They began to build their homes of bricks baked hard. The roofs were made of bright-colored tiles. A few hundred years after the time of Shih Huang Ti, Chinese builders began to give their roofs a new shape. They made the roofs turn up at the corners. The tilted-up roof corners and the bright colors make old Chinese buildings look quite different from old buildings in Europe.

The homes were built in groups of one-story buildings around courtyards or gardens. The floors of the houses were made of tile and were covered

with mats of rushes or grass or bamboo splints woven together.

Not much furniture was used. Beds were only piles of mats on the floor. During the day the mats and the bed covers were rolled up and put away. In very early times people sat on the floor and ate from low tables. Later they had stools and chairs. They used screens instead of walls to divide their houses into rooms. The screens were often made of polished wood and of silk beautifully embroidered.

Food was served in fine dishes. For hundreds of years the Chinese made the best pottery in the world. They learned to give it a hard, smooth surface, in beautiful colors. They used special kinds of clay and baked the dishes very hard. When we speak of dishes made in this way, we still call them chinaware.

Chinese food was served in bowls. There were spoons, but there were no forks, of course. So that they would not need to eat with their fingers, the Chinese invented what we, in our language, call chopsticks. These sticks were made of bamboo or of light wood or of ivory. They were dipped lightly into a bowl of food and then turned quickly toward the mouth.

Before the time of Shih Huang Ti, the Chinese people had learned to drink tea. They drank it at every meal and served it to friends who came to call. They served it in bowls instead of cups.

Rich people, both men and women, wore long gowns of fine linen or silk. Over these they wore shorter coats of

rich materials that were fastened on the right side with buttons made of shells or metal or highly polished bone. Both men and women wore jewelry. The women liked especially long, dangling ornaments for their ears and rings for their fingers. They wore richly carved ivory combs in their hair. They painted their cheeks and polished their long fingernails.

In winter the rich protected themselves against the sharp winds with soft furs, fashioned into wraps and scarves. Their long cloaks were padded with lamb's wool.

Most of the people still lived in huts of pounded earth or sun-dried bricks, thatched with straw. Their clothing was simpler than that of rich people. At work both men and women wore a short garment, something like a shirt, which hung loosely over trousers. When they went to market, they wore long gowns made like those of the rich people, though not of such fine material. In the cold winter weather they wore one gown over another. They made their garments warmer by quilting several layers of cloth together.

The food of the poor people was mostly millet and rice. They ate fish, which were plentiful in the many rivers of China and in the sea. They also ate the flesh of pigs and poultry.

Crafts and trade

People could not have had so many lovely and useful things unless some of them had been skillful in making such things. Many Chinese had given up plowing and planting and had learned crafts of different kinds. Among the craftsmen were weavers, dyers, tailors, furriers, jewelers, leather workers, and those who worked with wood and stone. And there were makers of musical instruments, for the people loved music. The Chinese formed guilds long before the people of Europe did. The Chinese guilds were much like those you read about on page 183.

People who lived along the rivers became traders, just as the people along the Tigris and the Euphrates and the Nile became traders. Boats carried poultry and eggs and grain and fresh pork from the farms to the towns and cities. They carried to the farm lands

Many people lived in thatched huts



things made by craftsmen. Some of the boats were driven through the water with paddles. Some were pulled along by men walking on the river banks. Others had sails.

On market days the streets of the towns were crowded with people buying and selling and trading. Tailors bought rolls of silk and linen. Jewelers bought fine metals. Cooks from the homes of the rich bought the choicest cuts of meat, while housewives from poor homes walked about looking for bargains in meat and vegetables.

Amusements

Like other people of whom you have read, the Chinese liked amusements. From earliest times they enjoyed music. Wind instruments, drums, and bells have been found in graves and tombs of ancient Chinese. Pictures left by them show that both men and women enjoyed dancing. They waved the wide sleeves of their long gowns and swayed to the rhythm of the music.

For the old, or for those who did not care for dancing, there were many games which could be enjoyed while sitting still. One of these was much like our game of checkers. One was much like dominoes. Another was like chess. There were games for more active people, too. Would it surprise you to know that the ancient Chinese played football? They did. Of course, their game was not exactly like the one which you enjoy now.

Jugglers traveled from village to village entertaining the people. They did many exciting tricks with knives, plates, and colored balls. Men whom we would call tumblers traveled from

town to town to give entertainments in the busy market places. They twisted and turned their bodies into almost unbelievable shapes and positions as they tumbled about on the ground, or scrambled up poles, or hung from bars. Other performers did skillful tricks of magic. Some showed small trained animals, such as mice or squirrels. Others had puppets that were made to dance and jump on strings.

Little girls played with dolls. Both boys and girls amused themselves by walking on stilts. They sailed kites shaped like dragons, or like birds, or like fish.

Birthdays were special events for Chinese children and grownups. Uncles, aunts, great-uncles, great-aunts, cousins, and friends were invited to birthday parties. When you think of a birthday party, you think of a pretty cake in the center of the table and the fun of blowing out the birthday candles before the cake is cut. The children of China did not have birthday cakes. In the center of their table was a great plate of noodles. Not an ordinary plate of noodles. No! There were yards and yards of noodles, wound round and round and piled high. On the very top of the pile was a piece of red paper cut into the shape of the words which meant, "Great happiness to you."

The guests at the party ate steaming rice, made especially good with little bits of meat or fish. They ate bowls of noodles with ham and bowls of noodles flavored with mutton. When they had eaten all the food, servants brought around little towels which had been wrung out of perfumed water, and everyone washed his fingers clean. Then



Watching a shadow play

the guests were invited to an open space in the courtyard where entertainment was offered.

Shadow plays were given, sometimes by wandering entertainers and sometimes by the old grandfather or great-grandfather who was head of the family. A screen of fine silk was set up. Behind the screen little puppets were made to perform. A light was set in such a way that the shadows of the puppets fell on the screen while they were made to act out old, old stories of Chinese life.

Writing

No one knows just when the people of China first learned to write. They certainly knew how to write before the days of the city-states. They probably did their first writing on shells or bits of bone. Later they used long strips of bamboo. Then they invented paper. They used paper hundreds of years before it was used in Europe. They wrote on paper, and they used paper

for making fans, kites, screens, and many other things.

The Chinese still write as they did long ago, with brushes dipped in ink made of soot. They do not write across a page from left to right as we do. They write in columns from top to bottom starting on the right-hand side of the page. The writer pulls his brush toward his body with quick, sure strokes. Perhaps in ancient times, when writing was new, people found that was the best way to write on those long strips of bamboo. They have kept on writing in that way.

The Chinese express their ideas in different kinds of characters or signs. One kind expresses common things such as *man*, *woman*, *mouth*, *ear*, *eye*, *bird*, *pig*, *sun*, *moon*. The other kind expresses such ideas as *big*, *too much*, *quarreling*, *trouble*.

The word *man* is expressed by a sign which looks something like a rude drawing of a man. *Too much* is expressed by putting an extra leg on the man. Isn't that a good way to express *too much*? *Quarreling* is expressed by making the sign for *woman* and near it the sign for *two mouths*. The word *prisoner* is shown by making the sign for *man* inside the sign for *box*.

There are reasons, however, why that kind of writing is hard to learn. One is that there are too many ideas and too many things in this big world to be expressed well with such

立於九品之上
中華民國
大仁寺

signs. Even to be able to read simple stories, the Chinese had to learn more than two thousand different characters.

A great teacher of China

The Chinese of early times had great leaders and great teachers, just as other people of the world had. One of the great teachers was a wise man named Confucius. He lived about five hundred years before the time of Christ. He

was such a very wise man that his name is remembered to this day, not only in China but also in many other parts of the world.

Confucius said many wise things. He tried to teach people to have respect for one another and to show kindness to one another. One of his sayings is much like the Golden Rule. It is: "What you do not like done to yourself, do not do to others."

China and the Other Countries of the World

Perhaps you have wondered why ways of living in China were different from ways of living in Europe. Perhaps you have wondered, too, why ways of living changed slowly in China.

Think for a moment about the lands around the Mediterranean Sea and in western Europe. You learned how civilization began in Egypt and the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Then the Hebrews in Palestine gave the world a new religion. The Phoenicians became traders and explored the lands around the Mediterranean. Then came the Greeks with new ways of living. Alexander formed a great empire and spread Greek ideas into Asia.

Next Rome conquered the lands all around the Mediterranean and nearly all of western Europe. After hundreds of years had passed, the Roman Empire of the West was conquered by the barbarians. Again ways of living gradually changed. They became simple and crude. The old Roman Empire was broken up into many little countries. There were wars between these countries. There were raids by Huns and Moors and Vikings. No one was safe.

Then, you remember, a new order came to Europe, bringing many changes. There were nobles living in great castles and peasants working on manors. Towns and trade grew again. Craftsmen began to make beautiful things.

You know that the Moslem religion grew up among the Arabs, and the Moslems conquered Spain, North Africa, and large areas in Asia. You saw the crusaders march east to try to drive the Moslems out of the Holy Land.

Time after time great changes came. Fashions in clothing and in building changed. Religions changed. Methods of writing changed. Ways of living and people's ideas changed. One country after another grew up and conquered great areas. Thus the peoples of one country caused changes in the lives of the peoples of other countries.

Why China was not like Europe

Now think about China. Civilization began in China at about the time Hammurabi was giving laws to the Babylonians. At first it was only in the valley of the Yellow River. Then came the great emperor Shih Huang Ti. He

conquered the many lands that later became part of China. For hundreds and hundreds of years these lands were part of China. Chinese ways of living spread to all these lands.

Shih Huang Ti's empire was about the size of the Roman Empire. All this land remained part of China. It was not broken up. Ways of living went on, changing only little by little. New ideas and new inventions were added. But there was no change in China as great as those in the other lands you have studied.

Chinese craftsmen made a number of great inventions. They invented paper, as you know. The people of Europe did not learn to make paper until hundreds of years after the Chinese were making it. Printing was invented in China, too. In Europe books were written by hand until more than a hundred years after the Crusades. China had printed books more than five hundred years before Europe had. The Chinese also invented gunpowder. They used it only in fire crackers, not for warfare. Another Chinese invention was the compass, which shows directions on the earth. The compass made travel by sea much safer than it had been before.

In spite of all these inventions, Chinese ways of living did not change very much. The Chinese people went on speaking the same language. It changed a little, but people who study languages can easily see that it remained the same language. The same thing is true of Chinese writing. Cloth-

ing and ways of building changed much less than in other countries you have studied. Chinese farmers went on working in much the same way as they always had worked. They even used most of the same kinds of simple tools.

In Mediterranean lands and far to the north in Europe there were many different peoples, with different ways of living. In times of peace, some of these peoples traded with one another. Travelers visited many strange countries. They told about what they saw, and they wrote books about it. People borrowed one another's ideas, ways of living, and inventions. In times of war, soldiers saw other lands. When one country conquered another, the conquered people often took over some ways of living from their new rulers.

The people of China did not have much chance to exchange ideas and inventions with other people. They traded, but not with people who could change Chinese ways of living. They traded with people to the south of China. By ship they traded with people on the islands near Asia. But all these people were less civilized than the Chinese. The Chinese did not learn new ways of living from them.

It may surprise you to learn that the Chinese carried on a large trade with Europe in early times. Silk was made only in China. People everywhere wanted this beautiful material. In the time of the Roman Empire, rich people everywhere in the empire could buy silk. All of it had come from China.





Chinese traders on the Silk Road

In Chinese museums there are still glass bowls that we know were made by workmen in the Roman Empire. They were sent to China to help pay for silk. Much Roman money was sent, too. After the end of the Roman Empire, there was less trade. Still, trade never entirely stopped.

In spite of all the trade they carried on, the people of China and the people of Europe never met. Chinese traders did not go all the way to Europe. European traders did not go all the way to China.

Chinese goods reached Europe by two routes. At first, Chinese traders went to India by ship. There Indian traders bought the Chinese goods. Then the traders from Europe came to India and bought the goods from the Indian traders. Later, Arab traders carried the Chinese goods from India to the eastern end of the Mediterranean. There they were bought by European traders. Most of the goods going to western Europe were taken by the Italian traders.

The second route went all the way by land. It was called the Silk Road.

It reached hundreds and hundreds of miles across Asia. Chinese traders took the silk and other goods from China to central Asia. From there westward they were handled by several traders before they reached Europe.

Old records show that the Romans tried to learn the secret of making silk. This was a difficult thing to do because the Chinese had strict laws about giving away any of their secrets. In spite of their laws, the secret about silk finally did leak out. About 500 A.D., an emperor at Constantinople sent men into China to try to discover the secret of making silk. They thought that perhaps silk grew on trees and they could get seeds. The men sent by the emperor came back. At last they had learned the secret of silk. Inside hollow staffs they had hidden tiny eggs. They cared for the eggs, and after a time little worms hatched from them. The worms grew and spun their delicate strands of silk, just as silkworms did in China. Thus the making of silk began in the Roman Empire of the East. Later it spread to Italy.

During all these years the Chinese people fought only a few wars. Sometimes they fought over who was to be the next emperor. In spite of the Great Wall, they often had to fight barbarians from the north. Emperors after Shih Huang Ti made the wall longer and stronger. They covered the outside of part of it with stone. They dug ditches along the wall. They built other walls in places that were hard to defend. Then the barbarians might have to cross two or three walls instead of one. Still they sometimes got into China.

Even the wars of China did not change ways of living. When one Chinese army fought another, both were Chinese. No matter who won, ways of living did not change. Even when the barbarians came in, they did not change ways of living. Compared with the Chinese, there were too few of them. Those who came into China learned to live like Chinese. The Chinese did not begin to live like barbarians.

The Mongols in China

Most of central Asia is a great, dry grass land. In places there are deserts. A large desert just north of China is called the Gobi. Like other deserts you have read about, the Gobi has a few plants. Herdsmen keep animals there.

The Huns and other people of central Asia were herdsmen. Most of them lived in tents. They had many horses. On horseback and in wagons they moved often from one place to another.

Many times some of the herdsmen from central Asia moved out to find new lands. The Huns were not the only invaders from Asia who came to Europe. Other tribes came, time after

time, to Europe and western Asia. The Turks whom the crusaders fought were one of these tribes. They had conquered the Arabs of the Holy Land.

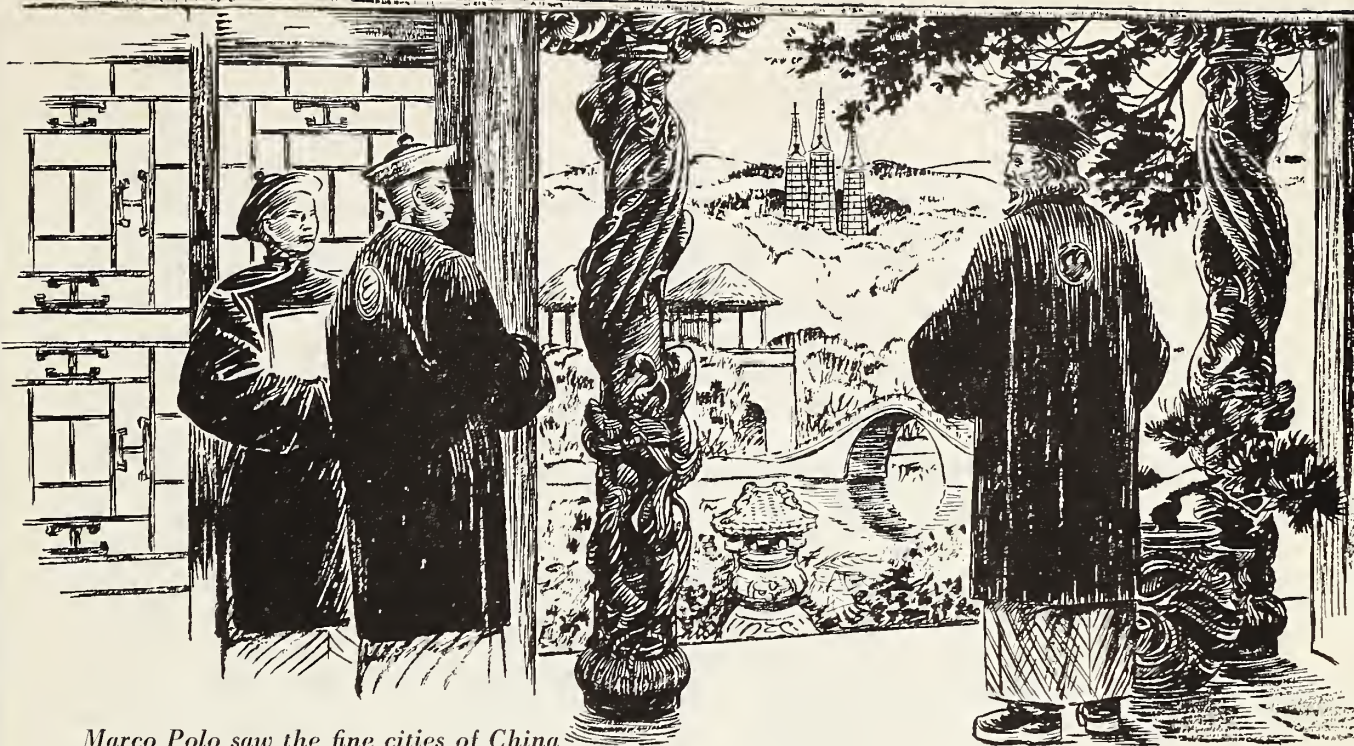
During the time of the Crusades other tribes of central Asia became very powerful. They were the Mongols. The chief of the Mongols was called Genghis Khan. Khan was the title the Mongols gave their rulers.

About the year 1200 A.D., Genghis Khan set out to conquer the world. The Mongol warriors were trained to fight on horseback. They swept over vast stretches of land from China toward Europe. They burned and laid waste and killed. They destroyed thousands and thousands of towns and cities. They conquered the whole land from the Pacific westward, far into Europe.

When the wars were over, Genghis Khan was the master of the largest empire ever to be held in the world. It was much larger than the world that Alexander had conquered a thousand years before. It was much larger than the Roman Empire, taking together the eastern and the western parts.

When Genghis Khan died, his son became Khan and conquered more lands. When this ruler died, his son became Khan. He was called Kublai. As ruler of all the Mongols, he was known as the Great Khan. He was quite different from his father and his grandfather. He loved beautiful buildings, rich garments, fine jewels, good foods. He moved the capital of his empire to a city now known as Peiping.

Kublai Khan conquered all of China that his grandfather and father had not conquered. From his capital city the Great Khan ruled over the vast Mongol



Marco Polo saw the fine cities of China

empire. Like other conquerors of China, Kublai Khan lived as the Chinese did. He gave up his Mongol ways of living.

The Chinese had tried to keep the people from other countries out of China. Kublai Khan welcomed visitors from other countries. He wanted traders from those countries to come to China. He invited men from other lands to help him rule China.

You have already met some travelers who went to China from Europe. Kublai Khan was the emperor whom the Polos, Maffeo and Nicolo, met in China. The Polos, you remember, returned to Venice after many years in China, and they took Nicolo's son, Marco, back to China with them. They followed the Silk Road eastward across Asia for three years. It was a long, long way, and travel was hard. By the time the Polos reached China, Marco was a young man and an experienced traveler.

The Polos went straight to the palace of Kublai Khan. The Great Khan was glad to see his friends again and was well pleased with Marco. He asked the young man to work for him and gave him many important things to do.

Marco worked for the Great Khan for seventeen years. He traveled all over China. He saw the fine cities and all the beautiful things the Chinese made. The Polos became very rich.

At last the Polos wanted to go home to Venice. The Great Khan did not want them to go. He kept them in China for several years after they wanted to start home. Finally he let them go. This time they traveled most of the long, long distance by ship. They went from China to India, from India to Persia, and from Persia home to Venice at last. In the next story you will learn what happened after the Polos reached Venice.

The History Workshop

Far, far east of all the early peoples you have read about lived the Chinese. They learned to do many things before people in other parts of the world did. How were the Chinese similar to the Europeans? How were they different? Let us see whether you can answer these questions by doing the following exercises.

Something to compare

A Chinese boy living at the time of the empire did things quite differently from the way you do things. Chances are, though, that you do some of the same things that long-ago Chinese boys did. Let us do a little comparing to see if your ways of living are alike in any way.

1. Make a list of the games a boy of China played long, long ago, and of the sports he enjoyed. Which of the games and sports do you enjoy today?
2. Did a Chinese boy in those days have paper on which to do his lessons? Compare the way the Chinese boy wrote with the way you write today.
3. Did the Chinese boy have birthday parties? How did they differ from yours?
4. What kind of a home might that Chinese boy have lived in? Compare it with yours.

How they lived

Chinese ways of living during the days of the Chinese empire were different from those in Europe. Both the people of Europe and the people of China had homes, clothes, dishes, and furniture. Tell at least one way in which these things in China were different from those in Europe.

Something to do

How would you like to put on a shadow play? All you need to do is to hang up a

large sheet and place a strong electric lamp behind it. Instead of using puppets, you can act out the parts yourselves.

Perhaps you can divide your class into groups. Each group can act out behind the sheet some part of Chinese life. For example, you can show a family supper, some people dancing, or a Chinese boy flying his kite. The rest of the class can guess what your act shows.

If you wish, you can shadow play an old Chinese story that your teacher has read to you. You can have fun thinking up the costumes to use for your shadow plays.

Choosing the correct answers

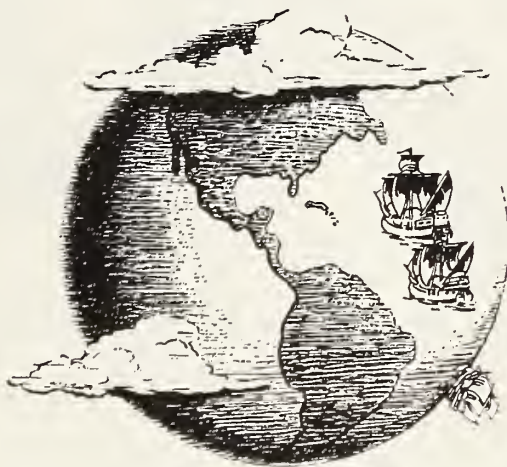
There were no sudden great changes in the ways of living in China as there were in Europe. There are many reasons why this was true. Choose the three sentences below that give the best reasons for this.

1. Civilization began in China at about the time Hammurabi was making laws for the Babylonians.
2. The Chinese did not have a chance to exchange ideas and inventions with peoples with whom they traded.
3. Northern tribes with which the Chinese fought were not strong enough to change Chinese ways of living.
4. The Mongol empire in China covered such a large area that its ways of living were not easily changed.

Books to read

These are just a few of the many books you can read to tell you more about China. *Yen-Foh, a Chinese Boy*, by Ethel J. Eldridge. *Honorable Goat*, by Helen Cory Bliss. *San Bao and His Adventures in Peking*, by Marian Cannon. *Peter on the Min*, by Dorothy Clark. *Two Lands for Ming*, by Stanley Hong Chin and Virginie Fowler.

Discovering New Lands in a Round World





Discovering New Lands in a Round World

Eyes and Thoughts Turn Eastward

The journey had been long and hard, and the Polos were worn and weary. But they were home at last! After twenty-four years of strange living in strange lands, they were home in Venice. Two noblemen and a lad had left. Now, knocking at the door of the Polo home, were three strangely clothed, bearded men who spoke as though they were not quite sure of the words they were speaking.

Those who came to the door laughed when the travel-worn strangers said they were the Polos. They laughed even harder and even longer when Marco and his father and his uncle told of their travels in the Far East. How amusing

that these ragged strangers should expect the people of Venice to believe such fantastic tales!

Before long the laughter changed to gasps of surprise and amazement. The Polos arranged a huge feast. They wore beautiful crimson robes, but after dinner the shabby clothes in which they had arrived were brought out. The Polos ripped open the seams of the tattered robes. Out tumbled glittering jewels; and there they lay, sparkling in the flickering candlelight.

Eyes widened. Mouths fell open in astonishment. Suddenly people ceased to doubt that these three were indeed the Polos. Soon all of Venice buzzed



with excitement over the tales the Polos told. Marco dictated a book that told of his travels—a book that told Europeans of another civilized people, far to the east. The descriptions Marco gave were exciting and romantic. But his information had come too suddenly, in too large a bite. Europeans could not suddenly accept so much new geography, and they dismissed much of it as interesting but open to doubt.

If you had lived during the time of Marco Polo, you might have doubted, too. Even if you had known how to read, you wouldn't have had history and geography books of your very own. Remember, printing had not yet been invented, and each book was painstakingly written by hand.

Not only were books rare and precious. They didn't have the information about people and places that you would expect to find. Even maps wouldn't have been of much help to you. They just didn't show things as

they really are. Wise Greeks of long ago had realized that the world is round. But during the Dark Ages geography had taken a step backward. There were still many learned men who insisted that the world was round, but most people thought of it as a flat disk. And that's the way the map makers drew it—as a flat disk.

On most maps that you see today, north is toward the top. Because it is the region you are most interested in, it is pictured as the top of the world. In Marco Polo's day, the Far East was the region most people were interested in; so the map makers of that day put east toward the top. As far as they were concerned, the Holy Land was the center of the world, and so they showed it as the center. They guessed about the shapes of the continents, and they weren't very good guessers. All around the earth they drew a boundless ocean. But the blank spaces on the maps looked very empty to them. So they filled



This map of Marco Polo's day showed the earth as a giant wheel—round but flat. The map maker knew so little about the world that the map is more of a puzzle than a help.

them with pictures. And with what pictures! Many of the animals and people could have lived only in men's imaginations.

The Crusades and the Polos had broadened the world known to man. But it was still very narrow indeed.

Problems of trade

Perhaps Europeans knew little of the people and countries of the Far East, but they had come to know more and want more of its products. Therefore, old trade routes grew busier and busier.

The cities of Italy grew richer and even more splendid. Year after year trade swelled.

Then something happened. Europeans wanted eastern goods as much as they ever did. More! But the supply had decreased. And prices on what there was had soared. Things were no longer the same.

It was shortly after the Polos had left China that the first slow changes began to take place. Even before the Polos had returned to their home in Venice, Kublai Khan had died. Very slowly the Mongol empire began to crumble. Few of the rulers who followed Kublai Khan did anything to hold the empire together. Princes and generals quarreled with one another. Their power steadily weakened.

It was then that more and more peoples who had been conquered by the Mongol khans began to fight for their freedom. No longer were the caravan routes safe. Merchants were robbed, even murdered. The Chinese again tried to keep people from other countries out of their land.

That wasn't all. The Turks slowly pressed farther and farther into the lands of the west. Italian merchants got control of all of the trade from the Far East. They charged other people higher and higher prices for the things they wanted to buy.

It had taken time for all this to happen. But happen it did. Just as Europe began to feel the results of trade with the Far East, that trade was

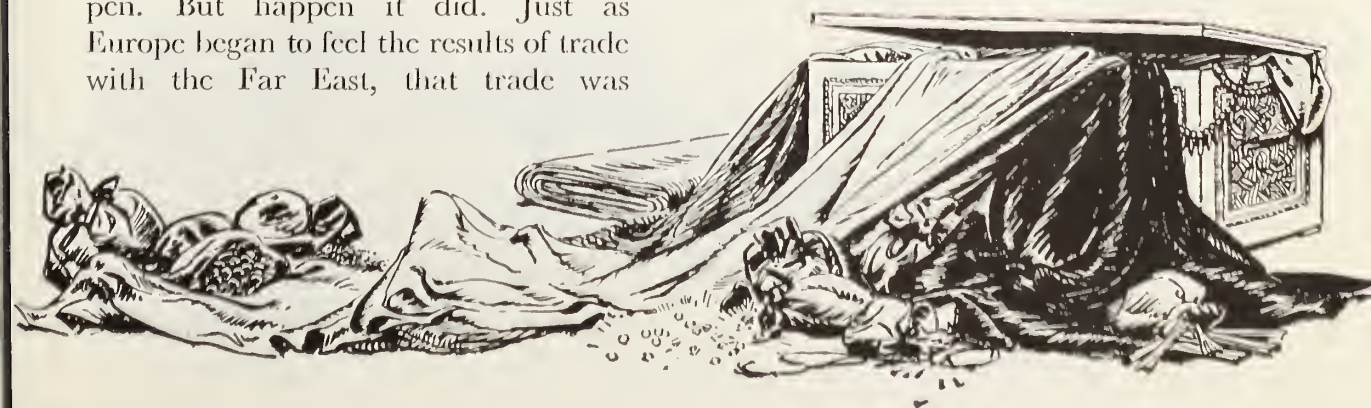
checked. Goods still trickled through, but they cost much, much more than they used to.

For a long time a question had been taking shape in the minds of Europeans. Was there no other way to reach eastern Asia? What about the ocean? A water route to India! There was magic in the very sound.

Merchants dreamed longingly about ships journeying back and forth between Europe and the Far East, their holds bursting with spices, silks, cottons. Seamen frowned. It was easy to dream. But whom would you get to sail into the horrors of the unknown, encircling ocean? Today we look at one of our maps and say, "Why, it's simple to sail around Africa to the Far East. Why in the world were they afraid?" Think back. Remember how little the people of that time knew about the world. The wisest men didn't know as much as you do about what the world is really like.

For hundreds of years sailors had been content to sail the Mediterranean. They felt safe on it. It was a calm sea. Land was always comfortably close, and the many bays and inlets offered safe harbors.

Not so the Atlantic. Few ships were seen on that vast "Sea of Darkness." Sailors had no instruments to tell them where they were. Once out of sight of



land, they had to rely on the sun and the stars. Sometimes a storm blotted out sun or stars. Sometimes it was cloudy or foggy. Then sailors had nothing to guide them. They would be lost at sea.

When the wind didn't blow, ships didn't move. When it blew too hard, the tiny ships tossed and pitched and rolled. Some were dashed to bits on hidden reefs. Some were swamped by the roaring waves. It took real courage to go to sea in those days.

As though these dangers weren't enough, men invented others. Terrifying myths grew up about the Sea of Darkness. There were whisperings of horrible monsters with eight or ten long, slithery arms that seized ships and squeezed them till they split and fell apart. There were stories of ships being swallowed, crew and all, by huge dragons. Sailors were sure that if they went far enough west they would reach the end of the world and would drop off the edge into endless space. To go south meant to go toward the equator. And to them the equator meant boiling, steaming seas and sheets of blistering flame. Even if a man could escape being boiled alive in the steaming seas, the fiery heat of the sheets of flame would turn him black for all time.

You know better than to believe all this. There were men during Marco Polo's time, too, who knew better. But there were so many people who were sure they were right that the foolish stories lived on and on.

Prince Henry and his dreams

In 1394 a prince was born in Portugal. Henry, as he was named, did not yearn to be a king. He wanted something else much more. He wanted to bring to Portugal a share of the trade that was making Italian cities rich. Venice and Genoa controlled the Mediterranean. Prince Henry could not hope to send his trading ships there. But what of the distant coast of Africa? From somewhere far to the south came rich caravans carrying gold and ivory. If only Prince Henry's ships could reach this Gold Coast!

Prince Henry left the gaiety and excitement of court life behind him. He gathered together all his books and maps and sent them to Sagres—a bleak and rocky cliff on the southwestern tip of Europe. To the north, to the west, to the south there was water. Sagres was almost surrounded by the restless, rolling Sea of Darkness.

Thousands of questions burned in Henry's brain. He sought out sailors,

The tiny ships tossed and pitched and rolled



the ships headed north. At last some sighted land—the ocean. He studied Africa. He looked over maps, and answered

More than of the questions for himself. since navvied men were invited to visit dread. There were those who knew how to handle ships, those skilled in mathematics, those who knew how to read the skies. There were geographers, map makers, ship builders. It made no difference from what country the men came, for all were welcome. Prince Henry was building the science of navigation—the science that would tell a sailor how to find his way over the ocean. And each man was adding his bit of knowledge to the whole.

New instruments to aid navigation were coming into use. For long hours each day the men at Sagres studied and experimented with them. One of them was the compass. You probably know about it—that it has a needle that always points toward the north. Navigators who used the compass knew in what direction they were going even when the sun and stars were hidden. It seems very natural to us today. To some of the sailors of that long-ago day it seemed like the work of the devil. They didn't want anything to do with it. Captains who used it were accused of being magicians. But sailors gradually came to see how very useful the compass really was.

Most maps of that time were of absolutely no use to seamen. The bright colors and the pictures were all very pretty, but the maps weren't accurate. They didn't help a ship's captain to get where he was going.

Long before Prince Henry was born, seamen decided to do something about



Prince Henry

the situation. At first they wrote out sailing directions that told how to reach certain places. These they sold to other seamen. Then they got the idea of making careful drawings of the coasts they knew. What a difference there was between the seamen's charts and the confused, inaccurate picture maps! Of course the charts covered only a small part of the world—those regions where seamen weren't afraid to sail. But the coasts that were drawn were drawn well.

Year after year Prince Henry urged his captains to venture farther along the African coast. He longed for them to round the bulging headland that men named Cape Bojador. But year after year his captains returned with the same story. The currents were fierce and the winds were baffling. A ship would be wrecked by the beating, foaming surge. And even if it were not wrecked, once it had passed the cape it would probably never again be able to return to Portugal. The winds and

currents that guarded Cape Bojador were too strong and terrible. Such were the excuses the captains made.

Prince Henry was a patient man. Finally his patience was rewarded. One of the captains decided to sail into the Sea of Darkness—away from the coast, away from the pounding waves of Cape Bojador. When he thought he had sailed far enough south of the cape, he steered for the coast once again. Finally land was sighted. And the sea was calm, as easy to sail as the waters around Portugal.

Regardless of what other seamen had predicted, the ship that rounded Cape Bojador did return to Portugal. During the next few years, ship after ship followed the new route around Bojador. One discovery after another was made. And finally there came the news that pricked up more ears than all the discoveries made thus far. One of the explorers had brought home some gold dust! Suddenly everyone grew interested. Those people who had grumbled about foolish schemes and lack of profit began to see good in Prince Henry's work. Those people who had hesitated over sailing to new lands over unknown waters were suddenly full of the spirit of adventure.

Many, many ships started out, but only a few started for exploration alone. And only a few brought home news of further discoveries. Those few carried notes about each new cape, each new river, each twist and turn of the coast line. Back at Sagres the map makers marked their charts so they would show the new discoveries. Slowly the charts showing known lands and waters grew. Slowly but steadily.

You know better than to believe all grown during the men during Marco had wanted only to stay knew better. Portugal and Africa. Butle who were gan to dream of rounding the foolish sailing on to India. Prince Henry in 1460, but his hopes lived on in minds of others.

Portuguese ships continued to creep farther and farther along the African coast. They followed the sweeping coast line far to the east, and then southward once again. Finally they reached the equator. They crossed it! Not a bubble of boiling water did they see. Not a single man turned black. They had crossed the equator and nothing had happened. In all their travels no one had seen any horrible monsters. Sailors heaved a sigh of relief and laughed at themselves for ever having listened to such foolish stories about the equator. Then they set out once again. Africa must end somewhere!

It was Bartholomeu Dias who finally reached the southern coast of Africa. Dias had sailed far to the south, farther than any explorer before him. Then a storm broke. A fierce storm! It swept Dias' three tiny ships southward, ever southward. The storm didn't stop after a few hours, or even after a few days. For almost two weeks the ships tossed and pitched on the wild seas. They were blown right past the southern tip of Africa.

Then finally the storm ended. Dias steered toward the east. He thought he was heading for land—for a place to stop and rest. But there was no land in sight. For several days he headed east. But all he could see was more water. Dias changed his course, and

the ships headed north. At last they sighted land—the southern coast of Africa.

More than fifty years had passed since navigators had first rounded the dreaded Cape Bojador. Now another frightening cape had been rounded. Dias and his men had been swept past

it during the terrible storm. Because it marked the nearness of the southern coast of Africa, it was named the Cape of Good Hope. Dias had reached the southern tip of Africa. Now there were no more land masses separating the Portuguese from India. The ocean path to the Far East was clear!

Europeans Cross the Sea of Darkness to a New World

For many years Portuguese ships had been seeking a route to India around Africa. Now there came a man with an idea that he could reach the Far East by sailing west. His name was Christopher Columbus.

Columbus sails westward

Columbus knew that the Sea of Darkness stretched far out to the west. In Marco Polo's book he read of the vast ocean to the east of Asia. He knew

that the earth is round, and so he decided that these two oceans must really be one and the same ocean. Columbus was sure that if he sailed straight out into the Sea of Darkness, he would eventually reach Asia.

Year after year Columbus wearily trudged from one place to another. Always he looked for someone to support his plan. He dreamed and he schemed and he begged and he demanded. Finally he succeeded. The

Columbus sets sail for the western ocean



king and queen of Spain agreed to supply him with ships and equipment.

Months passed before Columbus could get everything in readiness to sail. Ships had been greatly improved since Prince Henry had sent the first explorers toward bulging Cape Bojador. But they were still tiny and frail—not much larger than our fishing schooners of today. And in ships such as these Columbus meant to sail half way round the world. He had no idea of how large the earth really is. No one had.

Columbus figured he would reach Asia after a voyage of some three thousand miles. His guess as to mileage wasn't far off. But he didn't reach the continent he had expected to reach. Our own continent and the continent of South America were in the way.

Columbus didn't actually land on North or South America at that time. He explored some near-by islands. It didn't even occur to him that he might not be in the Indies, the rich spice islands of the Far East. He was sure that he had been successful—that he had reached the Far East by sailing west.

The people who lived on the islands puzzled Columbus. He had expected them to be wearing splendid clothes, to be living in fine cities. Instead they seemed to be rather poor. But he was sure he had reached the Indies, and so he called them Indians.

Indians in America

Columbus didn't know he had found a new world. But you know. And you know, too, that the people he called Indians were really the first Americans. Where they had come from was wondered about and puzzled over for a long,

long time. Even now we don't know the whole story. But we are quite certain that they came to the Americas from Asia.

People in Asia had moved farther and farther north, till finally they reached the place where Asia and North America are closest together. Then slowly, in small groups, some of them managed to cross over to the new continent. All this happened long ago—many thousands of years ago. The people who had come to America knew nothing of farming. They had carried only crude stone tools with them. All in all, they had to go through the same slow process of learning about things as those early people you read about at the beginning of this book.

Slowly the wanderers worked their way to lands with better climates and easier living. Some settled along the coasts; others moved inland toward the plains and woodlands. A great many pushed their way southward toward the narrow neck of land that joins North America to South America. And others pushed straight on into South America.

Each group developed its own way of life. Some continued to wander about, hunting or fishing for food. Others discovered the magic of growing plants from seed. Those who learned to farm no longer had to spend so much time in hunting food. They had time to think of other things.

All Indians weren't like those Columbus had met. Not at all! Some were even less civilized. But there were others whose civilizations would have amazed Columbus and his men.

Deep in the tangled jungles of the new world which Columbus had dis-

covered lived a people called the Mayas. They had settled in the dim forests between North and South America countless centuries before. The name Maya would have meant absolutely nothing to ancient Greeks or Romans. The word corn would have meant just as little. Yet, across the Sea of Darkness from Greece and Rome, the Mayas had been building a civilization that rested on the growing of corn. No one in all of Europe and Asia knew what corn was. It was raised only in the Americas. And the Mayas raised better and more corn than any of their neighbors. Their food supply was sure. Families were settled. Now there was time to do other things.

The Mayas did do other things. They built tall pyramids and gleaming

stone temples in honor of their many gods. They carved beautiful monuments and made cloth and shaped artistic pottery. But they didn't work only with their hands. They used their heads, too.

Some of the more learned Mayas studied the heavens. They watched closely, and compared, and thought about what they saw. Finally they worked out a calendar—a calendar that was better than any used in Europe even after Columbus' day. A method of writing was developed, too, and a system of numbers. When Europe was deep in the shadow of the Dark Ages, the Mayas were at their best.

Most of the Mayas lived in small palm-thatched huts scattered through the forests surrounding their beautiful

In a city of the Mayas



temples and pyramids. Year after year they cleared land, planted, harvested, and then started all over again. But clever as they were, the Mayas had never developed tools for farming. They simply dropped seeds in holes made by pointed sticks. Each year land became harder to clear, the grass thicker and more tangled. Farmers tried again and again, but finally the grass and the jungle won. When Columbus reached the Americas, the great Maya civilization was no more.

The Mayas had developed the finest civilization in the Americas. But there were others. There were civilized Indians in Mexico called Aztecs, and civilized Indians in South America called Incas. And their Indian civilizations had what Europeans always found most interesting—gold and riches.

Many years were to pass before Europeans could feast their eager eyes on the cities of the Aztecs and Incas. In

the meantime, explorers setting sail for the Americas no longer expected to find the wealthy cities of Asia. They knew they were exploring an unknown land. But that the Americas were huge did not occur to them. One of the explorers had landed at the narrowest part of the Americas, had cut a path through tropical jungles, and had found another vast ocean. If the land was so narrow, people thought, surely there must be a way through it. And once past the Americas, surely the distance to the cities of eastern Asia would be short. Even map makers drew the Americas as if they were narrow strips of land, as you can see by the map at the bottom of this page.

Centuries before, the Vikings had discovered the Americas. Now the countries of America had been rediscovered. But Europeans were still not very interested. Their thoughts still were of the rich cities of the Far East.

The map maker who drew this was the first to separate Asia and the Americas by another ocean.





Da Gama at a Moslem settlement

Reaching the Far East by Sailing East and by Sailing West

The Far East seemed very near for a while. Dias had reported that the eastern route around Africa to India was clear. Columbus felt sure that he had reached the East Indies when he had sailed west. But things were not so simple as all that.

Eastward to India!

Dias had passed the Cape of Good Hope in 1488. Almost ten years passed before the man who was to make a dream come true set sail. His name was Vasco da Gama.

Boldly Da Gama set a course to the Cape of Good Hope that took the ships far out of sight of land. Week after week passed, and always the view was the same—heaving waves, boundless sky, empty ocean. Never a sight of land! The sailors were bored and fretful. Almost a hundred weary days they sailed, over more than four thousand miles of choppy water. That was farther than Columbus had sailed without seeing land. Much farther!

It was July when Da Gama and his men left Portugal. Toward the end of November they were struggling to get around the stormy Cape of Good Hope. And in December they came to unexplored and unknown coasts. Regions explored by Dias were now behind them. Ahead lay the rich cities that Marco Polo had described.

Steadily northward they pushed, battling squalls and stubbornly resisting swift currents. For some eight hundred miles they sailed. Then, in early spring, they came upon some Moslem settlements. Now at last they were in the Far East trading regions, for they saw ships laden with gold and silver and spices.

Some of the Moslems were unfriendly. But there were others who welcomed the Europeans and who offered to send with them a pilot to guide them from African shores across the waters to India. Da Gama's ships were worn and the men were weary. But India was now so close! Away from the

coast of Africa and out into the open sea the Portuguese sailed. For more than two weeks they crept eastward. Finally the dim outline of mountain peaks came into sight. India! Prince Henry's dream had come true at last.

The first round-the-world voyage

Vasco da Gama had reached India by sailing east. But there were still some who thought they could reach the rich cities of Asia by sailing in the opposite direction. One of these was Ferdinand Magellan.

Magellan talked long and earnestly of finding a strait through South America. Through this strait he would sail to the ocean that had been seen on the other side of the Americas. And across this ocean he would sail to the cities of Asia. The king of Spain listened to Magellan. He listened, and he decided to give Magellan five ships.

For weeks the ships nosed about the South American coast. The days grew cold and bleak. Storms darkened the skies and whitened the waves. Winter was coming, and the strait had not yet been found. It would be dangerous to push farther along those unknown coasts. Magellan knew that. He steered into a roomy, sheltered harbor and told his men they would have to spend the winter there. Then supplies ran low, and food portions had to be cut.

The long voyage over the Atlantic Ocean, the frightening storms, the thought of a long, dull winter on a wild and unknown coast, and finally a shortage of food! It was too much! Some of the men began to grumble. They wanted to go back home. If Magellan would not take them, they

would get rid of him and go themselves. They tried. But there were still some men loyal to Magellan. They sent him secret word of what was happening. With their aid, Magellan managed to crush the uprising.

The thought of a long, wasted winter bothered Magellan even more than it bothered his men. He was anxious to get ahead, to find the strait he was sure existed. Perhaps sending only one ship ahead to explore would be the best idea. But the ship he sent was dashed against the rocks and wrecked during a gale. Five little ships. One was wrecked. Then there were four.

At last the long winter came to an end, and the ships started southward once again. They came to an opening that Magellan thought might be the strait. It was deep and narrow and winding, fringed by lofty mountains white with snow. Slowly the ships felt their way forward until they came to a place where the channel divided. Which way should they go? The ships separated, two exploring in one direction, two in the other. When they met again a ship was missing. Four little ships. One deserted and headed back for Spain. Then there were three.

For more than five full weeks the explorers fought their way westward through the narrow, stormy passage. And then they saw the smooth waters of a vast ocean. They had been successful! They had found a strait through the Americas.

How calm and peaceful the ocean seemed after the stormy strait! It was such a change that Magellan named the ocean the Pacific, which means peaceful. The voyage was peaceful—for a

while. But then it began to seem as though there were no end to the ocean. Food ran short. So did drinking water. And there was no land in sight. Biscuits were powdery and full of worms; water was yellow and thick. Still no land. The men suffered dreadful pains, and their gums swelled horribly. Then an island was sighted. Hopes soared—and fell. The island was barren, deserted. The ships sailed on. They came to another island, but the story was the same. The men grew desperate. Leather from the riggings and sawdust helped to fill some stomachs. Rats were hunted out and eaten, but even they were thin and starving.

For more than three months Magellan and his men sailed over the empty ocean. Many died. More were ill. At last they discovered a group of small islands and decided to land. The natives thought that a fine idea. They scrambled all over the ships and took anything that wasn't fastened down. They even helped themselves to the small boat that hung at the back of one of the ships. The only thing the Europeans could do was sail away.

Not long after, they came to another group of islands. There the natives were friendlier and more helpful, and Magellan decided to spend some time teaching them the Christian religion. One of the chiefs who had become a Christian asked Magellan to help him conquer a neighboring chief. Magellan couldn't refuse. With some sixty men he faced more than a thousand

angry natives. Slowly the Europeans were driven back. At the water's edge they fought, the natives aiming most of their blows at Magellan. Finally he fell. They pounced on him.

Those not too badly wounded escaped to the ships. Even then trouble was not over, but finally the Europeans managed to sail away. They had lost their leader. There were not even enough men to work all the ships. Three little ships. One was deserted and burned. Then there were two.

On they sailed, to the Spice Islands. Finally Magellan's goal was won! A heavy cargo of spices was loaded onto the ships. But one of them leaked so badly its crew was afraid to start out. Two little ships. One had to be left behind for repairs. Then there was only one.

Sixty men crowded onto that one remaining ship. They were bound for home, at last! But Spain was still a long, long way off. Again the men suffered from sickness and hunger.

At the Spice Islands



One after another they died. When finally the welcome shores of Spain were sighted, only a handful of men staggered ashore.

Almost three years had passed since Magellan and his two hundred and forty men had sailed away from Spain. Only eighteen thin but thankful men returned to tell the story of the first round-the-world voyage.

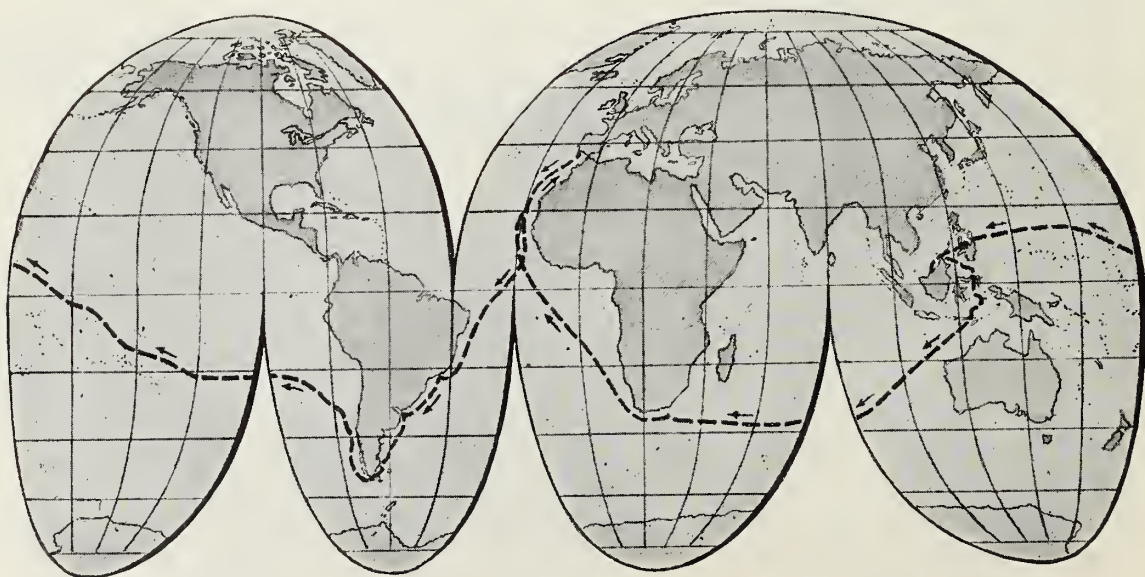
You can trace the route Magellan and his men followed on the map below. It would be a long time before anyone knew enough about our round world to make so accurate a map. But they were learning fast.

It would be best if you could trace Magellan's route on a globe. If you don't have a globe, try imagining one. Pretend that you are curling the map on this page until east meets west and until the north and south edges fit together at the poles. If you did do that, the line showing Magellan's route that runs off the edge to the left would meet the line running off the edge to

the right. If you did that, you would have made a globe out of the flat map. The picture would change.

That is what Magellan and his men did for the people of their time. They changed the picture. They proved that the flat-looking earth on which they lived was really round, for a ship had rounded it. It was large, too—much larger than had been imagined. More than a thousand days had been spent in sailing around it. Lands and peoples that Europeans had never heard of were still to be discovered.

Suddenly the world had seemed to grow larger. But there would come a time when it would seem to shrink again. Sailing was a slow way to travel. It made other places and other people seem far away. But faster ways of traveling were to be invented. The years needed to travel around the world would shrink to months, to weeks—even to days. And then people would know that other people all over the world were like next-door neighbors.



The History Workshop

Slowly Europeans learned more about the world they lived in. Portuguese explorers rounded Africa and continued on to India. Other explorers sailed west to the Americas, where bronze-skinned people were developing their own types of civilization. Finally one ship left Europe, sailing west, and when it returned it came from the east. It had made a voyage around the world.

Tracing trade routes

Do you remember the routes Europeans followed to get Far Eastern goods? Try to trace them with your finger on a globe or on a map of the whole world. First, European merchants bought their goods from traders at the eastern end of the Mediterranean. Next, the Portuguese worked their way around Africa to India. Then Magellan sailed west until he came to Far Eastern ports. Compare the lengths of these routes. Why didn't all traders use the shortest route?

Some things to think about

The work of explorers affects our everyday life. Can you think of some things you eat or drink or wear that come from lands that were unexplored for a long time?

Exploration is not a thing of the dim past. It is going on all the time. Men explore little-known regions and study little-known people. They collect remains of ancient people and uncover the ruins of ancient cities. Watch for articles in newspapers and magazines that tell about explorers of today.

Try to decide on a place you would like to explore. Think of things you would take along if you went exploring today—things that did not exist during the time of the explorers you have studied. Compare the speed of your travel with that of the slow ships of the early explorers.

Collecting pictures

Collect pictures that show how the Indians of the Americas lived. As you know, groups settled in different places, and each group developed its own particular way of life. Compare the pictures you find with one another and with the picture of the Mayas in this book.

Choosing the correct name

The following sentences tell about some explorers. Choose from the list below the correct name to use in place of the xxxxx's.

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Prince Henry | Ferdinand Magellan |
| Vasco da Gama | Bartholomeu Dias |
| Mareo Polo | Christopher Columbus |

1. xxxxx dictated a book that told of his travels in the Far East.
2. At Sagres, xxxxx collected information that aided navigators in their explorations.
3. The first man to round the Cape of Good Hope was xxxxx.
4. He thought he had reached Asia by sailing west, but actually xxxxx had discovered a new world.
5. xxxxx was the first European to reach Far Eastern cities by a water route.
6. One of the ships that started out under the command of xxxxx was the first to sail around the world.

Books to read

A few of the books that tell more about explorers are *America Begins*, by Alice Dalgliesh; *They Sailed and Sailed*, by Frances Margaret Fox; *Christopher Columbus*, by Edna Potter. Other books you might enjoy are *The Book of Indians*, by Holling C. Holling; *Magellan, First around the World*, by Ronald Syme; *The Story Book of Ships*, by Maud and Miska Petersham.

For Teacher Reference

History for the Beginner introduces the story of history. As a part of this function, it introduces and develops simple beginnings of certain basic historical understandings. Listed on this page are references to pages on which this job is specifically done—in textual content, pictures, and simple maps. References under each heading may be used as a basis for review and study activities.

For your convenience, the page references have been grouped separately under three headings—text, pictures, and maps.

Historical Continuity and Time Concepts

The references given here introduce simple relationships of things and people and events to each other in time.

Text: 2-20, 22-25, 40-41, 45, 50, 52, 68, 88-89, 129, 132, 135, 136, 137, 139, 155, 165-166, 189, 192-194, 217-218

New or Changing Ways of Living

The events of history change the lives of people and their ways of doing things. Simple facts related to changing ways of doing things are introduced on the following pages.

Use of land and animals

Text: 6-20, 25-27, 32, 33-34, 34-35, 37, 38-39, 45-47, 48-49, 65-67, 89-90, 108-109, 110, 133-134, 138, 140, 192-196, 220

Pictures: 11, 12-13, 18, 22-23, 24, 35, 37, 44-45, 64-65, 86-87, 110, 139, 154-155

Food, clothing, and shelter

Text: 2-20, 22-23, 24, 25-28, 30-31, 32, 34-35, 39, 48-49, 54-57, 68-69, 75, 97, 110-111, 120-121, 133-134, 140-143, 149, 158-160, 183, 192-196, 199-200

Pictures: 6, 11, 12-13, 20, 22-23, 24, 31, 34, 35, 39, 55, 74, 120, 140, 141, 142, 154-155, 198, 200

Useful inventions and discoveries

Text: 2-20, 24, 26-28, 29-30, 31, 32-33, 34, 36-37, 49, 50, 51, 60-61, 71-73, 124, 204, 215

Pictures: 24, 26, 27, 29, 31, 32, 35, 36-37, 49, 61, 118-119

Cultural Change and Progress

The events of history change the relations of people to each other and to their environment, and their ways of carrying on those relations. Simple facts related to such changes are introduced on the following pages.

Writing

Text: 40, 60-61, 72-73, 77, 83, 91-92, 151, 175-176, 202-203, 219

Pictures: 60, 73, 202

Keeping records

Text: 44, 52, 91, 151

Pictures: 53, 72, 92

Book making

Text: 11, 60, 77, 151, 204, 211

Pictures: 151

Education

Text: 40, 56, 57, 77, 95, 125-126, 144-146, 151, 183-185

Pictures: 77, 95, 146, 185

Recreation and play

Text: 39-40, 93, 96-97, 98-100, 126-127, 143, 146-148, 150, 160-163, 186-188, 201-202

Pictures: 99, 127, 147, 148, 186-187, 202

Religion

Text: 49, 54, 58-60, 76, 79-81, 92-93, 111-112, 128-129, 145-146, 150-151, 173-174, 176-179, 223

Pictures: 54, 59, 76, 102-103, 111, 128, 145, 174, 177, 178, 219

Arts

Text: 23, 30, 32, 44, 57-60, 76, 91, 96-97, 116-117, 200

Pictures: 28, 40, 61, 116

Music

Text: 39-40, 95, 143, 188

Interdependence of Peoples

Children should come to understand at a time early in their lives that people the world over are dependent on one another. This interdependence operates in very real and practical ways. Some of these phases of interdependence, simple enough for pupils at this level to understand, are presented.

Relations with world neighbors

Text: 23, 51, 64, 79-81, 90-92, 100-103, 106-107, 112-115, 132-137, 160-163, 166-167, 175-176, 203-207, 218-220, 223-224

Pictures: 8-9, 221

Transportation and trade

Text: 1-17, 36-37, 38-39, 49-51, 67, 69-73, 75, 79, 81-83, 90-92, 109, 111, 155, 160-163, 166-167, 170-171, 179-182, 185-188, 200-201, 204-207, 212-213

Pictures: 2-3, 4-5, 14-15, 16-17, 22-23, 36-37, 38, 44-45, 50-51, 69, 70, 71, 72, 80, 82, 90, 91, 92, 106-107, 117, 167, 170-171, 179, 186-187, 192-193, 205, 213, 223

Maps: 172

Travel and communication

Text: 1-17, 23, 35-37, 51, 90-91, 117-119, 134-135, 155, 157, 160-163, 163-167, 170-171, 204-207, 213-218, 222-224

Pictures: 2-3, 4-5, 6, 36-37, 43, 118-119, 161, 189, 207, 217

Social Cooperation

The essence of democratic living is the ability to get along with other people. Opportunities for the practice of cooperation are provided in all schools. It is useful to provide for children a simple story of the historical growth of cooperative living.

Family living

Text: 9, 22, 37-38, 54-57, 97, 110-111, 112, 119-121, 139-144, 148-150, 155-160, 160-163, 199-200

Pictures: 6, 20, 22-23, 55, 56, 97, 110, 120, 142, 159, 198

Community life

Text: 9, 10, 13, 24, 38-39, 47, 75-78, 93-97, 121-124, 139-144, 148-150, 155-160, 181-182, 185-188, 196

Pictures: 7, 8-9, 11, 12-13, 39, 74, 106-107, 122-123, 139, 149, 154-155, 181, 186-187

Government and law

Text: 24-25, 38, 47, 53, 78, 93, 97-98, 114-116, 137, 182, 188, 196-197

Democratic beginnings

Text: 24-25, 38-39, 78, 96, 97-98, 114, 182-183, 188

Children in history

Text: 25, 48, 56, 57, 77, 94, 95, 97, 124, 126, 201

Pictures: 4-5, 6, 8-9, 14-15, 22-23, 44-45, 56, 77, 90, 138, 155, 166, 170, 184, 189, 210-211

Index and Pronouncing Vocabulary

A star (*) indicates a picture.

Key to pronunciation: ā, as in āte; â, as in senâte; â, as in câre; ă, as in ăm; ǎ, as in finǎl; ä, as in ärm; á, as in ásk; á, as in sofá; ē, as in ēve; ê, as in créate; ě, as in ěnd; ě, as in nověl; ě, as in cinděr; ĭ, as in ĭce; ĭ, as in ĭll; ĭ, as in charĭty; ō, as in ōld; ô, as in ôbey; ô, as in lôrd; ǫ, as in ǫdd; ǫ, as in cǫnnect; ōō, as in fōōd; ōō, as in fōōt; ou, as in thou; ū, as in pūre; ū, as in ūnite; ū, as in ūrn; ū, as in stŭdy; ů, as in circŭs; N indicates the nasal tone, as in French, of the preceding vowel; g, as in go; th, as in thát.

- Abraham**, 80
Africa (ǎf'ri-ká), 214-217
Agriculture. *See* Farming
Airplane, 2-3*
Alexander the Great, 103, 106-107
Allah (ǎl'á), 173-174
Alphabet, 83, 92
America, 166-167, 218-220
Animals, taming of, 33-34
Anno Domini (ǎn'ō dǫm'ŭ-nī), 129
Apprentice, 183-184, 184*, 185*
Aqueducts (ǎk'wě-dŭkts), 117, 117*
Arabic numbers (ǎr'á-bĭk), 176
Arabs (ǎr'ǎbs), 172-176
Armies: Chinese, 196-197, 197*; of Crusades, 177-179, 178*; Greek, 100*, 101; Persian, 101*; Roman, 112-113, 113*, 115*, 124, 125*
Athens (ǎth'ěnz), 95-98, 96*, 101
Atlantic Ocean. *See* Sea of Darkness
Attila (ǎt'ŭ-lá), 136-137
Aztecs (ǎz'těks), 220
Babylonia (bǎb-ŭ-lō'nĭ-á), 68-78
Babylonian: government, 78; history and geography, 68-78; homes, 75; language and records, 71-73, 72*, 73*; religion, 76; trade, 69-73, 69*, 70*, 71*, 72*, 75
Barbarians (bǎr-bǎr'ŭ-ǎnz), 132-133*, 133-137, 135*, 197, 206
Bards (bǎrdz), 93
Bible, 81, 188
Bjarni (byǎr'ně), 165-166
Boats, 35-36, 36-37*, 67, 69*
Books, 11, 60, 77, 150-151, 151*, 204, 211
Bricks, 57, 68-69, 75
Bronze, 61
Buildings: Chinese, 199; Egyptian, 57-60, 58*, 59*; of Moors, 175, 175*; Roman, 116-117, 116*. *See also* Temples
Caesar, Julius (sě'zěr), 115
Calendar, 52, 219
Caliph (kā'lĭf), 174
Cape Bojador (bō-hǎ-dōr'), 215-216
Cape of Good Hope, 217
Carthage (kǎr'thĭj), 113-114
Castle, 140-144, 140*, 141*, 144*, 180-181
Chain mail, 162, 178
Chalons, Battle of (shǎ lōn'), 136
Chariot, 15*, 74*, 127, 197*
China, 189, 192-207, 213; map, 195
Chinese: amusements, 201-202, 202*; farming, 193-196; history and geography, 192-197, 195 (map), 203-207; homes, 195, 196, 199, 200*; language and records, 202-203, 204; trade, 192-193*, 200-201, 204-207, 205*
Chivalry (shĭv'ǎl-rĭ), 144
Chopsticks, 199
Christ, 128, 173, 174, 176-177
Christianity, 128-129
Christians, 128, 128*, 173, 174, 176-179
Church, the, 145, 149, 150-151
Circus Maximus (sŭr'kŭs mǎk'sĭ-mŭs), 117, 126-127
Cities and towns: Babylonian, 73-78; Chinese, 196; in Dark Ages, 138; early villages, 39, 39*; Greek, 93; growth of, after Crusades, 180-182, 181*, 188
City-states, 93-98, 112-114, 188, 196
Civilization: Chinese, 196, 198*, 203-204; in Dark Ages, 137; early peoples', 25; Greek, 103, 109-110; of Mayas, 219-220; Phoenician, 83
Clan, 38
Clocks, 76-77
Clothing: of Chinese, 198*, 199-200; of Crusaders, 178; of early people, frontispiece, 30-33, 31*; Greek soldiers', 100*; of Northmen, 158-159; Persian soldiers', 101*; Roman, 110-111, 120*, 121; Roman soldiers', 124, 125*

Columbus, Christopher (kô-lûm'bûs, kris'tô-fēr), 217-218, 217*
Compass, 204, 215
Concrete, 116
Confucius (kôn-fû'shî-ûs), 203
Constantine (kôn'stân-tîn), 128-129, 178
Constantinople (kôn-stân-tî-nô'pl), 171-172
Continents, 86
Copper, 61
Corn, 219
Craftsmen, 183
Crusades (krôo-sădz'), 178-179, 178*
Cuneiform (kû-nē'î-fôrm), 73
Curfew (kûr'fû), 182
Darius (dâ-rî'ûs), King of Persia, 100
Dark Ages, 137-139
Dates, 68
Democracy, 98
Dias, Bartholomeu (dē'ăs, bār-tô'-lô-mew), 216-217
Dyes, 33, 83
Early people: amusement, 39-40; art, 28, 28*; clothing, frontispiece, 30-33, 31*; government, 24-25; history of, 22-41; homes, 20*, 22-23, 23*, 34, 34*, 39, 39*; language and records, 22-23; trade, 38-39, 38*
Education. See Schools
Egypt (ē'jîpt), 44-61, 67, 80-81; map, 47
Egyptian (ē-jîp'shăn): art, 61; government, 47, 53; history and geography, 40, 44-61, 47 (map); homes, 54-57, 55*, 56*; language and records, 44, 52, 59-61, 60*; religion, 54; trade, 49-51, 71*
Equator, 214, 216
Eric the Red, 165
Ericson, Leif (ēr'îk-sûn, lēf), 166*
Euphrates River (û-frâ'-tēz), 64-67

Explorations: by Columbus, 217-218, 217*; by Dias, 216-217; directed by Prince Henry, 214-216; by Greeks, 91; by Magellan, 222-224, 223*, 224 (map); of Northmen, 155, 160-167, 161*; by the Polos, 189, 207; by Vasco da Gama, 221-222, 221*

Fair, 186-188, 186-187*
Falcons (fôl'kûnz), 148
Family, the, 37-38, 112, 155
Farming: Chinese, 193-196; in Dark Ages, 137-138, 139*; by early people, 34-35, 35*; Egyptian, 18*, 44*, 46-49; in the Fertile Crescent, 64-65*, 66-67; in Greece, 89-90; by Mayas, 220; Roman, 110, 110*
Fertile Crescent, 64-83; map, 67
Fire, 26-28
Flax, 32*, 33
Flint, 26
Floki (flô'kē), 163
Food: in a castle, 143; of Chinese, 200, 201; of early people, 25, 26, 37; of Egyptians, 54; on Magellan's voyage, 223; of Northmen, 160
Forum (fô'rûm), 116*, 117, 126
Freedmen, 122
Furniture, 55-56, 57, 120, 159-160, 199

Gauls (gôls), 115
Genghis Khan (jên'gîz Kăn'), 206
Gladiators (glăd'î-ă'tērz), 126-127
Glass, 61, 61*
Globes, 41, 41*, 46*, 66*, 88*, 108*, 156*, 194*, 224*
Gobi Desert (gô'bē), 206
Gods and goddesses, 54, 76, 80, 92-93, 111-112
Government. See Laws
Great Pyramid (pîr'ă mîd), 57-58

Great Wall of China, 197, 206
Greece, 86-103; map, 89
Greek: art, 102; government, 93, 97-98; history and geography, 86-103, 86-87*, 89 (map); homes, 97; language and records, 88, 91-93, 103; religion, 92-93, 102-103*; trade, 90-92, 90*, 92*
Greenland (grên'lănd), 165-166, 167
Guildhalls (gîld'hôlz'), 183, 183*
Guilds, 182-185, 188, 200
Gunpowder, 204
Hammurabi, King (hăm'-ôo-ră'bē), 78
Hebrews (hē'brôoz), 79-81
Henry, Prince, 214-216, 215*
Heralds, 146
Herdsmen, 33-34, 38, 65-66, 79, 79*, 89
Holy Land, 174-179, 211
Homes: Babylonian, 75; in a castle, 141-144, 142*; Chinese, 195, 196, 199, 200*; of craftsmen, 183; of early people, 20*, 22-23, 23*, 34, 39, 39*; of Egyptians, 54-57, 55*, 57; Greek, 97; of Northmen, 154*, 155; of peasants, 149, 149*; Roman, 110, 120, 124
Huns, 135-137, 136*, 206
Hunting, 24*, 25, 147-148, 148*, 192

Iceland (is'lănd), 163-165
Incas (îng'kăz), 220
India (îndi-ă), water route to, 213-217, 221-222
Indians, 166-167, 167*, 218-220
Inventions, 3; Chinese, 204; of early people, 24, 28; Egyptian, 49*, 60-61
Italy. See Rome

Janus (jā'nûs), 111, 111*
Jerusalem (jê-rôo'să-lēm), 174

Jerusalem, Kingdom of, 178
Jesus. *See* Christ
Jewelry, 121, 159, 200; of early people, 32
Joseph, 80-81
Journeyman, 183-185
Jugglers, 143, 201
Jupiter (jōō'pī-tēr), 111

Karlsefni, Thorfinn (kärł-sēf'nē, thōr'fīn), 166
Khan (kän), 206
Khan, Great, 189, 206. *See also* Kublai Khan
Knight, 10-11, 10*, 142, 144-147, 145*, 147*, 178*
Kublai Khan (kōō'blā kän'), 206-207, 213

Ladies in waiting, 142
Lamps, 28, 39, 160
Land of the Two Rivers, 65-68
Lares and Penates (lā'rēz, pē-nā'tēz), 111
Latins, 108
Laws, 24-25, 78, 97-98, 112, 183
Libraries, 77, 151
Linen, 33, 55, 56, 57, 58, 83

Magellan, Ferdinand (mā-jěl'ān), 222-224
Manor (mān'ēr), 10-13, 11*, 12-13*, 139-150, 149*
Maps: China, 195; after discovery of Americas, 220; Egypt, 47; Europe, 134; Europe and Asia Minor, 172; Fertile Crescent, 67; global view of Africa and Europe, 46, 66, 88, 108; global view of Asia, 194; global view of Europe and North America, 156; Greece, 89; lands of the Northmen, 157; Magellan's voyage, 224; of Marco Polo's day, 212; Rome, 109; world, 41
Maps of Marco Polo's day, 211-212, 215-216
Marathon (mār'ā-thōn), 101
Markets, 185-186

Mars, 111
Master, 183-185
Maya (mä'yā), 219-220, 219*
Mecca (mēk'ā), 173
Mediterranean Sea (mēd-ī-tēr-rā'nē-ān), 86, 163, 213
Minstrels, 143
Moat (mōt), 141
Mohammed (mō-hām'ēd), 173-174
Money, 71-72, 111
Mongols (mōng'gōls), 206
Monks, 150-151, 151*
Moors, 175
Moses (mō'zēz), 81
Moslems (mōs'lēmz), 173-179, 221
Mount Olympus (ō-līm'-pūs), 93, 98
Muezzin (mū-ēz'īn), 173-174, 174*
Mummies, 58

Navigation, 215
Needles, 31
New World, 86, 218
Nile River (nīl), 44-53, 48*
Nobles, 54-56, 75, 75*, 139-148, 179-180, 196
Northmen: history and geography of, 157 (map); homes, 154*, 155; settlements in new lands, 163-167; trade, 155, 162, 166-167, 167*

Occupations: Babylonian businessmen, 69-70; Chinese craftsmen, 196, 200; in Dark Ages, 138; Roman workers, 123, 123*
Old World, 86
Olive oil, 90*, 91
Olympian games (ō-līm'pī-ān), 98-100, 99*
Ornaments, 32

Pacific Ocean (pā-sīf'īk), 222
Page, 142, 144-145
Palm trees, 68
Paper, 60, 202, 204
Papyrus (pā-pī'rūs), 60
Peasants, 139-140, 148-150, 149*, 151, 179-181

Pedagogue (pēd'ā-gōg), 95, 126
Persia (pūr'zhā), 100-102
Pharaoh (fār'ō), 53, 54*, 80-81
Phoenicia (fē-nīsh'ī-ā), 82-83
Phoenicians, 81-83, 82*, 90
Pilgrims, 176-177, 177*, 186
Plow, 35, 35*, 195-196
Polos, the, 189, 189*, 207, 210-212, 210-211*
Polo, Marco, 189, 207, 207*, 210-212
Pope, 177
Postrider, 6-7, 6*, 7*
Pottery, 29-30, 29*, 40*, 199
Prehistoric, 40
Printing, 204
Pyramids (pīr'ā-mīdz), 57-59

Railroads, 4-5*
Religion: Babylonian, 76; Christian, 128-129, 145-146, 150-151; Egyptian, 54; Greek, 92-93, 102-103*; Hebrew, 80; of Moslems, 173-174; Roman, 111-112
Reykjavik (rā'kyá-vēk'), 164, 164*
Roads, Roman, 117-119, 118-119*, 138*
Roman: amusements, 126-127, 127*; classes of people, 123; government, 114-115; history and geography, 107-129, 109 (map); homes, 110, 120, 124; language and records, 112; religion, 111-112; trade, 106-107*, 109-110, 205
Roman Empire, 113-129, 132-137, 171-172
Rome, 107-129; map, 109
Rosetta Stone (rō-zēt'ā), 61

Sagres (sā'grēz), 214-216
Salt, 109
Scandinavia (skän'dī-nā'-vī-ā), 154; map, 157
Schools: Babylonian, 77, 77*; Egyptian, 56, 57; Greek, 95, 95*; Roman, 124-126

- Scribe**, 52, 72*
Seal, 73, 73*
Sea of Darkness, 213-214, 214*, 216
Shadow play, 202, 202*
Shih Huang Ti (shē'hwäng tē'), 197
Ships: of Columbus, 217*, 218; Egyptian river boats, 45*, 50, 50-51*; Greek traders and warships, 91*; of Northmen, 156-158, 161*; Phoenician traders, 16-17*, 83; Roman warships, 114*. *See also* Boats
Shoes, 31
Sicily (sīs'ī-lī), 114
Silk, 180, 204-205
Silk Road, 205, 205*
Slaves: Babylonian, 77, 78; Egyptian, 52; Greek, 94, 95, 96, 98; Roman, 121-122, 122*, 127
Snorri (snör'rê), 166-167
Songs, 39
Spain (spān), 175
Sparta (spär'tá), 94-95, 100, 101
Spear, 26
Sphinx (sfīngks), 59-60
Spice Islands, 218, 223, 223*
Spinning, 32-33, 32*
Squire (skwīr), 10, 10*, 142, 145, 146*
Stylus (stī'lŭs), 73*, 126
Tapestries, 142
Taxes, 53, 53*, 56
Television, 2
Temples: Babylonian, 76, 76*; Egyptian, 59, 59*; Greek, 102; of Mayas, 218*
Ten Commandments, 81
Theatre, 96-97, 188
Tiber River (tī'bēr), 109
Tigris River (tī'grīs), 64-67
Toga (tō'gá), 111, 126
Tombs, 58-59
Tools, frontispiece, 26, 26*, 40*, 195-196, 220
Tournament (tōor'ná-měnt), 146-147, 147*
Trade: Babylonian, 69-73, 69*, 70*, 71*, 72*, 75; Chinese, 192-193*, 200-201, 204-205, 205*; after the Crusades, 170-171*, 180-187, 186-187*; before the Crusades, 179-180, 179*; in Dark Ages, 138; among early people, 38-39, 38*; in the East, 188-189; Egyptian, 49-51, 71*; Europe with Far East, 212-213, 213*; Greek, 90-92, 90*, 92*; under the Guilds, 182-183; Northmen, 155, 162, 166-167, 167*; Phoenician, 82-83, 82*; Roman, 106-107*, 109-110, 111, 205
Travel, 35-37, 36-37*, 50-51
Tribes, 24, 38, 78
Turks, 177, 213
Vasco da Gama (väs'kô dá gä'mä), 221-222
Vellum (vēl'ŭm), 151
Venice (vēn'īs), 136, 170-171*, 171, 188, 210
Vikings (vī'kīngs), 154-167, 161*. *See also* Northmen
Weapons (wēp'ŭnz), 26, 124, 144
Weaving, 32-33, 32*
Weights and measures, 71
Wheels, 36-37
Women and girls: in a castle, 142-143, 143*, 147, 148; Egyptian, 56, 56*; Greek, 94, 97, 97*; Roman, 121
Writing: of Arabs, 175-176; Babylonian, 72-73, 73*, 77; Chinese, 202-203, 202*; early people, 40; Egyptian, 60-61, 60*; Greek, 91-92; of Mayas, 219; Phoenician, 83
Yellow River, 192-193

DATE DUE SLIP

DUE EDUC MAR 1 0 '83

RETURN MAR 7 - '83

DUE EDUC FEB 2 6 '87

FEB 23 RETURN

Cardinal File

D

178013

21

C79

C.9

EDUCATION LIBRARY

CURRICULUM

D 21 C79 c.9

Cordier, Ralph Waldo, 190

History for the beginner

EDUC



0 0004 2543 975

B9205